

THE
GALLANT,
DELECTABLE AND
PLEASAVNT HYSTORIE OF
GERILEON OF ENGLANDE:

Containyng the haughtie Feates of
Armes, and Knightlie Provvesse of the
same GERILEON, with his Loues and
other memorable Aduentures.

Composed in the Frenche Tongue, by Steuen
De Maison Neufue Bordeloiſ. And now
newly translated into English.



IMPRINTED AT LONDON FOR
Myles Iennyngeſ,

Dwellyng in Paules Church-yarde at the
Sygne of the Byble.

Anno Domini,

1578.

ЛІНГ.
МАНІК
СІДАЧА
Я ОДНОГУН ТИСАГЕЛ
ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА
ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА
ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА
ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА

ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА
ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА
ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА
ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА
ІСЛАХІСІ СІДАЧА

128

To the right Honourable and ver-
tuous Earle, the Lorde Philip Hovvard,
Earle of Surrey: all happinesse, healthe, felici-
tie, and continuauance of honour.



FTER that I had bestowed both paynes, trauaile and charges (Right honourable) aboute the reducyng of this delightfull Historie of *Gerileon* into this our mother tongue, and had therein vsed the aduise and conference of sundrie my frendes, I was awell by their counsaill emboldened, as otherwise of myne owne nature, willyng to presente and consecrate the first fruites therof (by waie of Dedication) vnto your good and honourable Lordship. The Historie it self beyng firste written in Frenche, was (in deede) for the greater parte thereof, after a kynde of sorte, translated by a certaine yonge man, more hardie and venturous in attempte, then luckie and Fortunate in atchieuaunce: whose good meaning, as it semeth to merite pardon, and perhappes some thankes: so vpon further scrutinie, examination, and conference of the copie with his Translation, it was easie to finde where he had tripped, and where (vnawares) he had vtterly loste his waie. Wherevpon I was driuen to sustaine a double labour: One in perfectyng his imperfектions: The other in finishyng and supplyng that parte of the Booke, where he had abruptly brokē of, and absurdlie skipped ouer. And for that the copie thereof (commynge at the firste into my handes by chaunce emong other thynges) was so farced with prodigious phrases, and so apparauntly halte in sense and vnderstandingyng, I caused the

*.j. same

The Epistle.

same to bee repervsed , and looked ouer anewe , that no dili-
gence should want, wherein my industrie might any thyng a-
uaile.Which labour and trauaile I humbly dedicate vnto your
Honour;not doubting, but that as the Booke it self shall som-
what dignifie your worthie person , and emblazon your re-
nowned fame:so againe, that it shall bee from the bright bea-
mes of your shining vertues,both the better countenaunced,
and the freendlier accepted of all worthie yonge Gentlemen,
delightyng in Cheualrie,Martiall exploites, and suche amou-
rous discourses, as are tolerable incident to the greene Prime
of youthfull yeres.In fine,herein is verie aptly shadowed out,
a perfecte type of Dame Vertues Pilgrimage , whose naturall
course , vsuall trade , and ordinarie happe , is through many
sharpe daungers,bruntes, and aduentures,to purchase the gole
of honour and renoume in this life, and afterwarde a Croune
of immortall Fame and glorie in the life to come:vnto
the whiche I humblie beseeche Almighty G o d ,
after many yeres heere happily besto-
wed,to bryng your good Lordship.

*Your Honours most humble
to Commaunde*

Myles Lemynges.

IN AVTHORIS LAV.
DEM, PETRVS LAVERNIUS
BVRDEGALENSIS.

Am iam materna sileat facundia lingue
Gentis Romanæ : sileat veterumque poesis
Ad binos celebrata polos, redimita corona
Victrici : poscit meritam sibi Gallia palmam:
Doctorū immensum pelagus, quos docta sub antro
Pallas Castalio teneris nutriuit ab annis:
Inter quos tibi magnus bonos, & gloria surgit
O lux Burdegalæ, nullum peritura per æcum.
Mortua qui dudum lethæos hausta liquores
Corpora, viua facis, gratū quoque cernere lumen.
Aeneæ Stygijs penè occultata sub vndis
Arma Maro cecinit, medijisque erecta ruinis
Dardanidum sacra, & lustratum nauibus equor.
Hectora Mæonius, bellumque furentis Vlyssis.
A te Gerileon nigro renocatus ab orco,
Euasit superas iterum rediuiuus ad auras,
Gerileon, belli, fulmen, tonitruque tremendum:
Qui, quantum timido toruus Leo fortior hirco,
Tantū alios superat, nulli æquiparādus in armis:
Cui nunc belligeri cedunt præclara Rolandi

Facta, & Amadisij inuicti, fortisque Renaldi.
Hinc procul hinc liuor, suetas repetatq; cauernas,
Nullas hic poterit noxas sufferre libellus.
Utque duces vincit, belloque insignis, & armis
Gerileon, vinges alios sic Pallados arte.
Mantua Virgilium iactet, Verona Catullum,
Roma patrem eloqui laudet, Sulmoque Nasonem:
Ast magni tua fama petet regna alta Tonantis,
Teque suo illustris gaudebit Gallia alumno.
Ergo dum cælo stabunt defixa sereno
Sidera, dumque iubar lustrabit lumine mundum,
Gerileon leuibus penetrabit ad Aethera pennis,
Et stabis toto semper celeberrimus orbe.

AD ILLVSTRISSIMVM LONGEQVE
HONORATISSIMVM HEROEM, D. PHILIP-
PUM HOWARDUM, COMITEM SURREIUM,
TETRASTICHON.

Quisibi cunq; placet, Librum & tibi consecrat vni,
Inlyte Surreio stemmate nate Comes:
Ille quidem cunctis alijs placuisse videtur,
Nam cunctis vnius (clare Philippe) places.

Th. Newtonus, Cestreshyrius



Thomas Newton in Commen- dation of this Booke.

A Perfecte paterne of Renowmne, a type of Cheualrie,
An haughtie harte, a brest ysbraught with Magnanimitie,
A Stage of state and stoute attemptes, a Theatre of Fame,
With eche odde circumstaunce of praise, belongyng to the same,
Who list and is dispolde to see in colours trimly touched,
Mare in this Booke be fully stor'de with furniture well couched,
Whiche though the subiecte of the same, in feigned matters standes,
With names of persones, places, hilles, Mounts, Iles, seas, castles, lades:
Yet (doubtlesse) it affordeth stuffe, right pleasaunt, fitte and good,
To traine the mindes of noble wightes, & Impes of Mars his blood,
By valiaunt ventures to acchieue exploites of passyng praze,
Whereby their fame maie reache beyonde the date of mortall daies.
Whiche is and aye hath bsen the spurre, whiche moued hath the same,
To passe the pikes through thicke & thin, through fier, sworde & flame.
To whiche effecte this worthie woozke, now lately caught hath bin,
(Inuested erste in Frenche attyre) an Englishe threede to spinne,
For verie loue to Native soile: to moue vs Englishmen,
To trace the steppes of vertues loze, and rouze out of our denne
And Cradle of Securitie, wherein wee lulled are,
As men of Englishe prowesse earst, not takyng any care.
In lieu of paines, the onely fee that craued is of thre,
Is that thou wouldest iudge of the same with singlenesse of eye,
And frendly make reporte thereof: so shalt thou haue the rest,
Of stoute Gerileons gloriouſ actes hereafter more exprest.

Thomas Newton.



SH stately style the glorious Greekes displayed
Achilles deedes, and Alexanders fame:
In worthy woorkes the wittes of Rome assayed
To spreade abroade Dan Scipioes noble name.
So euery writer sought to painte the praise,
Of such as were their countreymen of poore:
But lo, the Frenche amazde in these our dayes
At Englishe Actes attchieued heretofore,
Bewray at length, by their ouerlandishe Penne,
Gerileons gestes (a peice of pierelles price.)
Causeles therefore shall any Englishemen
So good a guifte reiect in scornewfull wise:
Since seemely Surrey shrowdes it from mischaunce,
And Frenchemen first Gerileon doe aduaunce.

W. M.



THE FIRST BOOKE of the Hy storie of Gerileon.

After the death of the most puissaunt and vertuous king *Brandis melle* King of greate Britaine, there succeeded hym in the gouernement of the said Realme, a Sonne of his, called *Floridamant*. The whiche beyng in hys Pallace at London, feastyng his Lordes and Barons, and making preparatiō, one afternoone, to go course an Harte, in the company of the Princes, *Huberte* of Scotland, and *Dorian*, Sonne to the Kyng of Spaigne: which Harte he had seen in a wood neere to the Castle of *Mirandoll*, There entered into the Hall a Damsell, who hauyng recounted to hym a certayne aduenture, had hym away with her.

The first Chapter.



H o s e whiche haue beene curios in readyng of auncient Histories, are nothing ignoraunte howe, amongst those Realmes, whiche for their fertilitie and worthinesse haue in tymes paste merited any Commendations, Britaine the Greate hath not only matched, but also farre surpassed them all: As well because of naturall beauty & goodness therof, as in that it is the country vnder heauen, which of all Antiquity hath bene more populous, & better stured of strong and valiaunt Knightes, then any other, whatsoeuer: therer dwauen and allurede, partlie by the excellent and deuine beautie of the Ladies there inhabiting: partly by the merueilous and straunge aduentures there accusto-

A. f. mably

The Hy storie

mably found. In so much that for this occasion it hath been
often called the Lande aduenturous. Neither might any
one of so raine Coaltes or Countries name hym selfe a
true and valiaunt knight, if in it hee had not made prooife
of his woxhines, there atchiuyng some strange aduentu-
res. But especially in the tyme of the mooste prouisaunt and
virtuous king Brandismer, whiche hauyng by his prowesse
and valiauncy conquered many Realmes and Prouinces,
as Normaie, Sverblande, and Denmarke, instituted also the
order of the twelue couragious knighthes of greate Bri-
taine, beyng suche, and endued with so greate force and va-
liauncie, that fewe their likes were as then to bee founde
in the whole worlde. Amonge whom, for mooste valiauncie
was the kinge Ferrande of Normaie, Dom Grandilaor and
Dom Murbel king of Denmarke. The rest also because
of their bountie, dexterite and bouldnesse in matters of Ar-
mes were greate praise worthy. For this occasion was
king Brandismer much feared and redoubted of his neigh-
boures and borderers, yet no lesse beloued of them for his
courtesie, liberalitie, lenitie, and humanicie, with other ver-
tues infinite, whiche were resplendisaunt in hym. And in
suche sorte, that there was not hee whiche (doyng hym the
most toylesome and agreeable seruice hee coulde) did not yet
esteeeme himself most happy to be insinuated into his good
grace and fauour, so to gaine his gratiouse amitie. But the
facall Sisters (most impious, and enuious of the good suc-
cessse and felicitie of humaine kinde, and of those especially
whiche retaine a singular contentement and pleasure to bee
in the fellowship and acquaintance of a Prince so vertuous
and debonaire) bereft them the shinyng gleames of no-
blenesse and myroure of Chiualry out of this worlde, shrea-
ding a sonder the last thred of this so vertuous a king, the
vere of grace after the death of our Sauiour Jesus Christ,
418. the 66. vere of his age, and 32. of his raigne. Wher-
bypon I can not rightly expresse the dolour & sorrow that
the

the couragious knyghtes his Subiectes receiued wch his
most prynate and best frendes. In so muche that (as recoun-
tech vs the Hystorie) there were suche of them as remained
twoo or thre Monethes, without power to refraine them-
selues from weeping and lamenting most bitterlie, wher-
as it came to them in minde of the Bountie and Vertue of
that noble Prince. And chieslye the worthy olde *Candor*
Duke of Normandy, a Prince surelie amongest the Sage
and hardy, muche commendable. Neuerthelesse as there is
noe griefe so greate, whiche in course of tyme (a quicke con-
sumer of all thinges) is not put sooythe of remembraunce:
So for iuste cause this good Lord of Normandy, together
with the rest whiche were mooste dolefull for the losse of a
King so debonaire and vertuous, at laste made ende of their
plaintes and lamentations. And for iuste cause saye I, in
that he lefte them for successour, a Sonne of his, begotten
by his deere and loyall Spouse and wife Florixe (whiche
not many yeres before had departed this life) whiche saide
sonne after the death of his Father was Heire, not onely of
his terreine Dominions and Possessions, but also of his
most rare and singuler vertues. For besides that he was a
good knyght, prudent and hardy past measure, beeynge of a
large stature, his members well made, formed and propo-
tioned in equality, the one wch the others, of sixe or seauen
and twencie yeres of age: or there aboutes: he was also had
in reputation for the most sage, modest & courteous Prince
of his tyme. In so much that (to make brefe) no man could
require or wish any thing proper or conuenient for so great
a personage as his, whereof his valiauncie and invincible
powesse was not beautified and adorneed. This same was
called Floridamant, the whiche did never finde man (of what
force or puissance soever he were) who daring to fust with
hym, hadde not gauen plainly to feele and understande, that
he was peerelesse and not matcheable. For this cause there
was no knight in all Bretaigne the Greate, whiche at his

A.ij. newe

The Hystorie

newe arriuall to the Crowne, did not deliberate and determine to conuerte and tourne the lamentations and weepinges of his Fathers death into ioyes and gladnesse, for hauing after the losse of a good Loide and Maister, recouered and receaued a better kyng. To whom there lacked so litle, that he shoulde degenerate from the bouncie and goodness of his predecessor, that by his vertue (whiche rather more then lesse did hym illustrate) he did in such sort striue and endeouour in equaltie of valiauncie, and good behauoir to imitate and counteruale hym, that his Knights, Princes and Barons, with other of his Vassalles and Seruauntes, thought in nowise to haue chaunged their Maister: who bwillyng to omit anye iote of his greate magnisfcence, a while after his Coronement, made and gaue so many faire and Godly Gifces and Presences, not onely to the couragious knyghtes his Subiectes, but also to such straungers as were come to visite hym, and to make offer to hym of their seruice (beeyng nothyng ignorant that liberalicie rendreth men subiect and bounde towardeſ chose whiche vſe it:) that there was not he, whiche yricke and prouoked with a desire to doe him agreeable seruice, (so muche his lenity and liberality had charmed and enchaunted their affections,) would not willingly haue put his life in hazard, for the maintenaunce & conseruation of his honour. And for that, that a litle afore the decease of the good king Brandismer his Father, he had espoused the daughter of king Barrachen of Scotlande, named Bellizenne, a Princeſſe as sage and vertuous, as faire and gracious (for fewe there were) who then for beauty & good grace, durst compare with her: There were come to visite hym, the twoo valiaunt Princes, Hubert of Scotlande, Brocher to the Queene Bellizenne, and Dorian, Sonne to the kinge of Spaine, whiche had aforeyntimes beene Compagnions of Armes, and attchiued many Exploites and haughtic ente-
prises with hym. He determined to addreſſe and make rea-

DIG.

die all sortes of recreations and pastimes, the more honou-
rablie to feaste and entertaine them, as to appoint Tournies
and Tourneis for the loue of Noble Dames and La-
dies, and to conducte them to the Chace of wilde Boares,
Hartes, Roe buckes, and other suche like beastes. But as
he enforced hymselfe to shewe them suche, and all other like
pleasaunt recreations and pastimes, whereof he coulde bee
advised: Fortune, which by her mobility & inconstancie, ne-
ver suffreth thinges in one esse, nor abiding, but (like to the
immutatio of the Sunne, whch sometymes lendeth vs his
Rays and Beames moste resplendent, cleare and brighte,
and his pleasaunt smilyng vilage, sometymes againe cou-
red and ouerwhelmed with an infinite number of chicke
and darke Cloudes or Mistes, to vs appearingng obscure
and darke, causeth to fall vpon vs a multitude of waterishe
and rainy showers) straight waies is to vs frendly and fa-
vourable, lettyng vs sauout and smell the sweete taste of
an infinite number of delightes and pleasures, by and by
contrariwise tournyng vpsidedoune the order of humaine
affaires by a chaunge and alteration of volours and sorro-
wes, which she mingleth & produceth amongst her volup-
tuos encisementes, & bringeth vs most often, of anguishes
and dolours, a multitude innumerable: making vs feele as
muche bitterness in the ende, as she hath in the beginnyng
(brought pleasure) ne permitteth long these Princes (which
as then had none other care, but to make good cheare, and
too entertaine eache one (of the Queenes Dames and
Damozelles which were full faire and gracious, whom he
bare most affection unto) to enioye these delightes & pasti-
mes, without depryuyng them thereof, shortly, and that by
the mosse straunge aduenture wheroft ever was made men-
tion. For so it chaunced that the newe king Floridamant
Leyng in his Pallacie at London in estate and forme aboue
recoliced, accōpagnied with the Princes Hubars of Scot-
lande, and Dorian of Spaine, purposing at after dinner to

A. iij. goe

The Hystorie

goe to course an Harte whiche bee had seene that morynng
in a Wood neere to *Mirandal*, which was a Castell of one
miles distaunce from the Towne, gauen by the king to his
newe espoused wife, at certaine seasons there to recreate,
and refreshe her selfe when she should thinke good. The
whiche, besides the Architecture and magniscent buildin-
ges, with diuersities of woorkes, whereof it was framed
and wrought, the moste pleasaunt and riche of all others,
as then to be seen, was in like maner so delectable and plea-
saunt, because of the said wood wherwith it was enuironed,
more then a myles compasse aboute, that it was vnpossible
to ioyne oughe therunto, to geue enlargement to the per-
fection thereof, in all that which one could desire or wylle to
a place of like plausance, there entered into the Hall a Da-
mzell of meane beauty, whose countenaunce to see to, seemed
so bedewed with teares & dolefulnes, that one would haue
thought that of long tyme she had done nothyng but wept
and lamented, in that as yet appeared along her face the
trickling Teares distilling by grosse and greace droppes.
This same Damsell apperceyng the king, whom she see-
med well to knowe, came to prostrate and fall doun on her
knees before hym, and sighyng bitterly (eacheone hauyng
pursued her to understande what whiche she would saye) she
spake on this sorte. Most puissaunt king, in whom al boun-
tie and woxhines of Chivalry and vertue aboundes, more
then in any other vnder Heauen, the same of your prowesse,
humanitie, courtesie and valtie (which so often hath flowed
from the one till the other side of the worlde) hath caused
mee to come from farre euent to these Costles, to requeste
and beseech youre Royall highnesse (the whiche I trusste is
not dispuruaied of mercy ne pittie) that taking compassion
of the most vnforunate and miserable Damsell that liueþ,
it may please you, in respecte of the order of knighthoode,
whiche you haue taken, not to denie me your succour and
ayde, against the most presumptuous & wicked wight that
liueþ

of Gerileon.

fol.4.

liuech on the Earthe. For (saide she drawyng a sorrowfull
sigh from the botome of her hearte) I am of opinion, that
none (my Lord) but you, hath power to succour mee in this
case, so fierce and puissaunt is the disloyall wight, whiche
hath wrought mee this wronng. But I hauyng so greate
confidence and affiaunce in your bouny and prowesse, sup-
pose that you onely may matche hym and geue hym the o-
uerthrowe, whiche hath bene cause, that reiectyng all feare
and shame through the necessitie which oppressed mee, thus
ouerboldly and vreuerently I haue dared to beseech your
Royall highnesse, to bee so fauourable to mee in this my so
urgent affaire, assuryng my self that not for gettyng in any
pointe the dertie of a wise and valiaunt knight (suche a one
as you are accompted) which is to succour Ladies & Dam-
selles afflicted as I am, you will not gainesaie ne denie mee
of the request whiche I pretende to make to you: for that
no man euer heard say, that for cowardise or slacknesse (vi-
ces whiche lodge not in you) you euer disdained, or dis-
courteously denied any other, who (as I now do) requested
you to geue them, aide and succour. After that she had made
an ende of her tale, þ king (which had seen her in speaking,
weepe so bitterly, and three or fower tymes to breake of
with suche continuall and hartie sighes and sols, that there
was na harte so harde, cruel and vnpitifull, whiche she
would not haue moued to cōpassion) tooke such pity of her,
that hauyng caused her to stande vp, where afore she kneel-
led, he made her this aunswere. Damsell tell mee hardly in
what affaires my succour may serue and be fauourable vn-
to you: promislyng you that no thyng for getting my ductie,,
I will hazard my life to sustaine your right, or at the least,,
wile I will knowe what therin you haue. Then the Dain-,,
sell greatly appeased & satissfed, with so good and gracious,,
an aunswere, chankynge hym for the same with a lowe reue-,,
rence, coloured her visage with somewhat more ioye then,,
she brought, therein painted a while afore, and ceaslyng her,,
teates.

The Hystorie

teares saide vnto hym: Than I desire you Sir, to geue me audience, while I make you a recitall of my ill lucke and misfortune, and attencively to understande the forme of myne aduenture more vnhappye then ayre other, whereof euer mention was made since the memoerie of man. Wherin it is meete you knowe, that I am by birthe of the Lande of Thacie, and Daugher of a Noble and vertuous Kyng, named Mimoberis, who in hys tyme hath beene as strongt and valiaunte in Armes, as anpe oþer whatsoeuer, but so finallye fauoured of Fortune, that nowe she suffereth hym to consume the rest of his age, so miserably as is possible to imagine: for that he liueth in a Prison made cruell and tirannous, with a torment tenne hundred tymes more sharpe then the horroure of death it selfe. And thus it chaunced that one daire, as hee was in the queste and pursuite of straunge aduentures to make proofe of his force and valure, & also to get praise and honour (the only Guerdon of Illustrious and gentle hartes, as all wanderyng knigthes accustomably doe) passing by chaunce through a certaine Forrest, he encountered a wilde Boare, whiche being striken and wounded through the bodie with a Darte, came and fell downe not farre from hym stark dead, which he apperceiuyng, tooke and charged vpon his horse to carry it away: but as hee beganne to departe, there came towardes hym another knight of so small stature, that hee exceeded not the height of two or three cubites, but therwiche so strong and puissaunt, that no knighe nor Giaunce whatsoeuer, might endure his force, and for this cause so feare and presumptuous, that if he sawe any thing to hym not agreeable, were it wrong or right, he would haue it. This fellowe seeing the pрайe whiche my Lord and Father caried, said to him very stoully, that he either should deliuere & geue to hym the wild Boare ouer right, or otherwise he would let hym understande that it was not for such a one as hym to gainsaie any thyng to hym agreeable. My fater, whiche had his

his Hearke so fixed and settled, and who was of so greate
courage, that he could in no wise suffer so presumptuous a
bragge: to hym answered, that he shoulde not haue it with-
out conquest made by the pointe of the Swerde. Whereon
the licle knight whiche had to name Nabor, was so chaffed
and enraged, that putting without more wordes his hande
vpon his Swerde, he stroake my miserable father so rude-
ly vppon the head, that at the firsle blowe hee brought hym
dounie all astomished from his Horse to the grounde: where-
on after he had laid the wilde Boare, he tooke my Father
betwixt his armes and caried hym into the molte straunge
and Butcherous Prison, that euer was hearde spoken of.
For besides that, he hath clogged his feete with greate
and weightie Gues of Yron, hee ne geueth hym all the day
to eate ought elles, but a Morsell of most salt Bacon, with-
out drinking more then once in twoo daies, of the molte o-
bious and corrupce Water that is to be founde: and when
as hee purposeth to take his iourney anye where on Horse-
backe, he causeth hym to bee brought foorth to cranche to
the grounde, that he setting his foote vpon his backe, may
make hym serue for a Stirrope to mounche on Horsebacke:
then sendyng hym backe to his Prison againe, causeth hym
to bee scourged and tormented molte cruelly. I knowyng
this (my Lorde) haue been often before hym, to entreat
hym to haue my Father rausomed, at what he woulde re-
quire. But hee therein hath alwaies gainsaide mee, mana-
syng mee with like crueltie, if in sicke Monethes I coulde
not prepare and present a knight whiche shoulde bee able in
iustlyng, to bryng hym from of his Horse. Whiche thynge I
endeavouryng to doe, haue brought hym already, full many-
parte whereof he hath slaine, and parte whereof he hath put
in a prison farre more miserable then that of my poore Fa-
ther. In so muche that now ignorant, of what woodde to
frame myne Arrowes, I haue enterprised to make this
rashe request whiche you haue haue. So muche hopyng in

B. J. thas

The Hystorie

that bountie and pro wes whiche aboue all others, maketh
you esteemed throught eache coast of the vniuersall wold,
that it shall bee you onely, who shall haue power by puttynge
to deach the cruell and disloyall *Nabor*, to deliuere me from
the mortall and languishyng dolour, whiche for long space
hath made in me residence, geuyng to hym libertie whiche
hath begotten me.

The kyng hauing well heard the purpose of the Dam-
sell: and supposing her to haue said truce, deliberated to suc-
cour her as well for the necessarie whiche she seemed to haue
of ayde and assistaunce, as to prove hymselfe agaistre that
Nabor, of whom hee had often hearde speake, and for whom
he had searched in many Countries to doe the same, with-
out euer findyng hym at all. And seeyng than, when he least
thought thereof, the occasion too bee ministred so to fit his
purpose, to make proofof the force and valiauncie of hys
person, by encountring with that mightie *Nabor*, he would
not lette it slippe so. Yea chieflie for so iuste an occasion as
that of the Damselles. In liche wise, that it was not pos-
sible what pitchy reasons souer one alledged to discourte
and staye hym from going alone into Thrace, there to com-
bate for so iuste a Quarell. Wherof the Queene Bellizen-
ne was much grieued and discomforred, praiying moche in-
stauntlie the valiauncie and hardie Prince, Hubert of Scot-
lande her brother to beare hym company, whiche thing hee
promised her to doe. Yet hys king in no wise would suffer noz
permit it: but deepe ly bowed and sware to trauell solelie
with the Damsell, to geue accomplishment to his promise,
whereof she was much ioyous, who instauntlie putting her
selfe in waite, spuryng her Palfrey in the flancke with all
diligence possible: And the kyng whiche was furnished of
all Armour, necessarie for the Combate, and eke well hor-
sed, pursued her as fast as his Horse would runne a grande
gallop. After whose departure al the Thoxties whiche as
then were resident in his Court retirde home, abandoning
the

the same in such sort, that of the xiij. couragious Pères of the said Britaine the Create, there remained but the kyng Ferrande of Norwaye onely, whiche because of his faithfulness and bountie, was appointed Gouernour of the Realme in the absence of king Floridamant: and the prudēt prince Candior Duke of Normandie, the whiche, because of the sondaine absence of their kyng were greatly sorrowfull and astonished. Notwithstanding takyng it paciently, they made of necessarie a vertue, for lettynge ceasse their late dolours, they betooke themselues to cōfōrte in best wise they could, the desolate Princes Bellzenne, whiche for sorrowe and yksomnes care her haires, & committed many suchefoolishe actes of a frātice woman, & one wout sense. Whiche byng the prudēt Prince Ferrande of Norwaye seeyng, counsailed her (thereby the better to forget her griefe) to goe spore her selfe at Myrandol, as she did, where chaunced to her that which you may perceave in the Chapter's followyng. So we there muste now leauē her to make recount of that whiche hapened too the kinge after his departure wth the Damsell.



Who was the Damsell whiche led awaie the Kyng Floridamant, and who was the Necromancian Minofoll which had builded, by his enchauntments, the superbius and sumptuous edifice of the red Castell. And also how the kinge lost the Damsell in a thicke wood, replenished with wilde and sauage beastes, where his Horse beyng dead vnder hym, he hard the lamentable voyce of a certaine Damsell whiche complained most bitterly. Towardes whom as he marched to succour her, he recountered a Knight, whom after a fierce and tedious Combate he slewe.

B.ij.

¶ The

The Hy storie

The seconde Chapter.



HEN once the desire of venge-
aunce hath taken roote in a ma-
licious harte, full of furie and
rage, There is no meane, waite,
noȝ thing, in humaine puissance,
nether, as I beleue, in the en-
emie of Nature, that he (whiche
hath conceaued thys foresayde
hate against another) doeth not,
inuente, or dare not attempte to

satisfie his will and wilhe, as maye let vs understande the
example of the Necromancian, whom I doe meane to men-
tionate in this Chapter. Therefore it is to be vnderstan-
ded, that in greate Bretaigne there was an Ilande adioy-
ning to the saied Realme, which men called the greene Isle.
Wherof a knight named Mynofol was Lorde and ruler,
who from his infancie had so bestowed his tyme in the arte
of Necromancie and supernaturall Magicque, that by the
same he atchiued many marueilous Matters, and impossi-
ble to many others, who dealed therewich to be lesse expert
then he in his arte. In maner that by his enchauntmentes
and diaboticall charmes hee had builded in his Isle a Ca-
stell, the most sumptuous and magnificent that with mans
eynes was ever seen. For the Sonne thereon gleamyng his
bright Rayes and Beames from morning till evening, one
would verily iudge (so great was the force of his enchaunt-
mentes) that in stead of Stones, there were placed greate
Rubies the mooste faire and beautifull of the world. And
with reuerberacio of the same, the Aire & Trees of the Isle
appeared as red as fire, for a Miles compasse aboute. And
it was to bee maruelled greatly, how the knyght Mynofol
could build any so sumptuous and stately an Edifice, as the
red Castell (so did the bulgar sorte comonly name it)seyng
that

that it was not in puissance of the greatest Monarque of the whole earth, to reare and construte another, whiche in perfection and sumptuositie of matter exquisite, miraculous, or artificiall, was thereto comparable. And for what occasion he made the same, full many also we're ignoraunt, but it is to bee presupposid that it was not without cause why. For it behoueth you to buderstande, that the predeces-
sour of *Minoſoll*, whiche was somewhat akinne and of al-
liaunce to the vertuous and mightie kyng *Brandifmel*, pre-
tendyng some right to the Realme of greate Britaine (out
of the whiche by his auncetours he had been repudiate and
reected, for takyng to wife the ſister of *Grandowine* kyng
of *Cornewalle* and *Irelande*, whiche then as yet helde the
Pagan lawes and beleued on *Mahounde*, had wrought and
before had tended many meanes and treasons againſte the
Father of valiaunc King *Floridamant*, whiche never laye in
his power to execute as he pretended, without daunger of
the totall ruine both of hym and his, whiche was the caufe,
that his Sonne *Minoſol* being as then yong, and of ten-
der age, he caused him to leare with greate heede and dili-
gence, the Artes of Necromancy, by ſtudiyng the bookeſ of
Medea, *Circe*, *Morgue*, and other ſuche. To the intente to
reuenge hymſelue of king *Brandifmel*, by ſuche meaneſ as
Medea tooke vengeaunce of the iniurie doen to her, by her
unfaithfull and periured freende *Iafon*. But God whiche by
his bountifulnesse, doth ſtill regarde thole whiche followe
the right waies and Pathes, whiche he hath appointed for
them, with a piteous and mercifull eye, to take awaie all
meaneſ and waies from the traitour Lordes of the greene
Ile of annoyng the kyng of great Britaine, ſuffered that
death ſhould ſende hym doun to hellē, thereto ſcrue in the
boatman *Charons* Barge, afte he euer ſaw his ſonne *Adi-*
nofol well experimeted in his arte, to bryng to an ende his
peruerfe pretence and wicked wil. This ſame *Minoſol* not-
withſtandynge, beeing once acertainyd by his Mother, for

B. iij. what.

The Hystorie

what occasion his father had caused hym frō his tender ye-
res so curiously to be endoctrined, & taught in this duuelishe
Arte (in the whiche, since hee was arrived to good age) hec
was so skilfull and experte, that fewe like to hym were as
then to be founde. As one that was of his Fathers nature
and disposition, that is to wit, a Traicour, wicked, and re-
uengearie, hee imagined in his fantasie too put in execu-
tion the purposed pretence of his predecessor. And so to
bring to passe the same, he still had caried till after the death
of the good kyng Brandismel (seyng no meanes durynge his
lise to finishe his conspiracie, and vengeable falsohodde) that
hauyng bulit the rede Castle, whereof I haue afore spo-
ken, he addredded the Damosell towarde the Kyng Floridas-
mant, to require hym of that you haue harde aboue recited,
knowyng hym prompt and hardie to giue succour, and aide
to Dames and Ladies wronged and offended. And so that
he knewe, he had often tyme, searched for Nabor to com-
bate with hym, to the ende to entrappe and withdrawe hym
more easly to hym, he appoined hym the message, whiche
you haue fully seen in the Chapiter precedent. So that the
Damozell, doughter to the knight Mmoberis, whiche Nabor
had in prison, had sone perceiued hym to put in practise, to
deliuer her Father, whiche thynge he denied her: And so ma-
kyng his profite of her request, instructed the Damosell his
cousin of the Plot before spesified: who plaied so well her
part that she brought the Kyng alone after her, which pur-
sued her, so as is afore saied, as faste as his horse could ga-
loppe, without euer atteinyng to her. For she had a palfrey
possessed with a Deuill, whiche the Magician there had by
his enchauntementes put: for that he went so swifte, that of
all that daie nought did he but trot, without ceasynge, or re-
styng: and the Damosell rapped hym excessively, seinyng
to haue greate haste, vntill suche tyme as the nocturnall
darcknesse, had chased farre into the Weste, the shynynge
chariot of Phaeton: then she armed in a Fopesse chiche,

and

and darcke, beyng obscured by the manisfolde braunches of
mightyie Dakes, which there were innumerable, in so much
that one could see there no more (I thinke) then within the
moste darcksome denne of the profounde and infernall hell.
Wherin beeynge entered farre afore, the Kyng who still
pursyng her as nere as possiblie he could, at laste lost sight
of her: and not knowyng where she was become, he staid
somewhat his horse, to harken if he could any whit vnder-
stand the tramplyng of her Palfreis feete, therby to follow
her trace: but that was in vaine. For he heard nothyng els,
but an infinite noyse and yellyng of sauage beastes, as Bea-
res, wilde Bores, Lyons, and suche like, whiche made so
greate a yelling, that there scarce one could haue heard the
bounsing clapps of soundyng Thunder. Whereof I leauie
you to thinke if the kynge had occasion or no, to bee astoni-
shed, and greatly abashed. In that I dæme none so sure and
stable, whiche would not haue been afraied at that tyme, to
approache and enter a place so daungerous. Notwithstan-
ding he was of so magnanimitous and haughtie a courage,
that, that seemed to hymself lesse then nothing: sauing that
he could no moare finde out his guide and conductresse. But
endeavouring hymselfe to searche for her, it was vnpossible
to make his horse either to go forward or backward, what
blowes or spurres souer he could vse. And whether it was
for the wearines and feeblenes of his limnes, or for feare
that hee had to see hymselfe in a place so hydeous, after hee
had beene long tyme pricked and spurred: hee on a sodaine
fell groueling to the earth, whereof the good king Florid.
beyng aduised, and wightely forsaking the Saddle, see-
foote on ground, and leaning his Elbowe against a Tree,
with his head againte his hande, remained a long space in
that sorte, astonished muche and merueilously: so ill stode
his case, vntill such season as hee heard farre before him in
the Forrest a voyce Feminine, which complained most bie-
terly. Then plucking vp his harte, he thought to haue been

The Hystorie

in no basiger at all, and blamynge himself for hauyng remained sadde and pensive so long , was somewhat eased in that he had heard a humaine voyce , in a place so roughe and sausage, wherem he deemed nothyng els to haue been, but outragious and cruell beastes . And deliberated (supposyng that to be his Damsell, which some one had offended) to go to that place were he deemed her to bee. And to succour her the better : hee tooke his naked Sworde in his hande , and his Shilde vpon his Arme: wherewith marching through the Forest, he encountring a Knight throughtly armed , and horsed as well as was possible, whiche in appearance seemed to be fraught wих hardinesse. To whom he saied with greate anger Syr Knight, wherfore is it that you haue so outragiously and cowardlike misused a Damsell whiche came in my companie , whom not long since I haue heard cōplaine here aboytes. It well appeareth that you care not for that order of knighthood whiche you haue taken, when in liew of defending Dames wronged , and outragiouslye valt withall, you enforce your selfe to damage and iniurie them thus . But by my headde I sweare, I will geue you to knowe , that it is right ill doen of you , to haue committed so greate wickednesse and villanie. During whiche wordes the knight which doubted little, that after his hoat and many wordes, he would haue vsed suche sharpe deedes as he did, for feare lest the King should kill his Horse : sette foote on earth saiyng. By GOD, vassall, you haue fasse lieyed, for I knowe not of what Damsell you speake, rather I beleue it is your selfe, whiche haue misused one whom I haue hearde complaine . But for feare least I should accuse you of that villanie , whereof you speake , you are come to prevent me; pursuing with your sworde to kill my horse, by that meanes to make me fal, and to flea me more easly: but yet you are further out of your accempt, then you are ware of. Notwithstanding, seyng you are so well prepared to Combate, I will geue you thereof your fill. Then beganne
he

he to preasse full bouldly vpon the king, who receiuing him
with marueilous hardines, after the receite of some of his
aduersaries blowes vpon his Shielde, which throught the
first weight & violence thereof, was pearced in diuers pla-
ces, entreated hym at laste (after a long Combating, with-
out hauyng aduaunce the one of the other) in suche and
so rude a maner, that the knight whiche thought hymselfe
not matcheable, wished in minde that hee had not met with
suche a mate. Alwaies (nowtstanding) defending himselfe
the beste that hee could, made in a maner that the medling
was so harde and sharpe as euer was seen of twoo knigh-
tes onely. Wherof the king greatly maruailynge, hauing
never found knight that made hym so long resistaunce,
entered into so deepe choler, that yked with the longe du-
raunce of the Combate, he tooke his Swerde in both han-
des, and with the same discharged with al his force, a strok
so violent vpon the creast of his aduersaries Helme, that
neither the Shielde whiche he cast before it, nether the good
workmanshippe of his Harnesse could warde or warrante
it: without beeing battered and crushed together, and the
Swerde passing further, well neare cut his head in twaine.
By this meanes he was constrained to fall doune all blow-
die dead thereby. Wherof the king was exceeding ioyous,
as well for hauyng ended a Combate so daungerous, wher-
of hee never hoped to haue had so good a dispachall, as in
that hee had recovered an Horse to cary hym foorth in quest
of his Damozell: But hee kept hym not long after, as ye
shall heare in the Chapter followyng.

How King Floridamant loste the Horse whiche hee had
conquered of the Knight hee slew, of whiche hee
was bereued by the subtile ferche of a crafte Thiese,
whiche was resident in the Forrest, from whiche af-
ter he had departed, he met with an Heremite whiche
gaue hym to eate certayne Chestnutes, and other

The Hystorie lo

rootes of Hearbes in his Hermitage, from whence be-
yng issued, he did so muche, that he arived on the sea-
coaste, where he founde a Spirite in humaine forme
and shape, whiche by the commaundemente of the
Magicien *Minefoll*, after he had made hym enter
into his boate, brought hym into the Greene Hande,
where he was taken, and put in prison in the Redde-
Castell.

The third Chapter.



After that the noble Kyng *Floridamant*,
was seised of the knyghtes horse whom
he had slaine, he mounted on hym, to af-
fale it by traueilng now this, now that
waie, he could finde ery path, whiche
micht conduce hym out of the Foreste,
entendyng to seeke some lodgyng, to

passe with reste the small remnaunce of the night that was
to come: but seeyng that where so euer he went, he founde
nought but grasse for his pillow, and grounde for his bed;
and traualled in vaine to deparre thence, he was constrain-
ned, having tied his horse to the banche of a tree, to couch
himself under the couerture of the cleare dewy night, with-
in an hollowe Daken Tree whiche was in the Forest,
where al nighes (whiche seemed to hym longer then y^e Siege
of Troy) it was not possible for hym to sleape any whit at
all, whiche brought to passe that he arose in the mid nyng,
fourte howeres before his wortd use, at any euer here afore.
For scarce began the reddish and arte messenger of the day,
to drue out fro the Skie the darknesse and shade of the night
to procure place, to the brightnesse of the cleare shinyng
Sonne beames, but he was alreadie horsed, and had in ma-
ny places, searched the Damozell whiche had caused hym
comme therer, entendiug to finishe his voyage;

But as he tourned from one side to the other of the Forest, he arived by chaunce in place where the night afore he had tyed his horse, whiche he couered greatly, as beyng far better then that whiche he had gotten: and looked on eache side if he could see or aperceiue hym. But not espiyng hym, he proceeded somewhat further, where as it were in chicke of the Forest, hee hearde a certayne neighing, whiche sould to the ear, as proceeding properly from some Horse, whiche caused that thinking, that that was his, he alighted to assay to take hym, because the place where he thought he had hearde him, was so chicke and full of little shrubbes, that it was unpossible for any man to travell there, but on foote. Then goinge thus through the Forest, thitherwarde where hee hearde the neighyng (the whiche the more hee wente forward, the further of was it) hee was brought into such extremitie, that after long and vaine rolyng through hedges and bushes, hee loste and dismissed hymselfe from the Path, by the whiche he was come into the most chicke of the Forest. Notwithstanding hee did so muche at lasse by goinge and comminge from one place to another, that within twoo howers after, he began to finde a Path whiche conducted hym straight to the place, where hee had lefte his horse tyed to a little Tree. Whereof hee was somwhat ioyous, but his ioye endured smal time. For when he was arived, he founde hym not there. Whereof he became farre more astened and sowfull then afore, for he had bounde hym so well, that in no wise he coulde escape to flee awaie, as indeede he was not fledde, but (as wiceth the Historian Gallar) he was taken and stolne by the subtill shifte and craft of a good fellowe, which was commonly called the wily outlawe, remainyng in that Forest. And wylly outlawe might hee well bee called, in that verie fewe passed that waie, of what disposition or qualitie soever hee were, whom hee had not by some meanes robbed of somewhat alwaies; as he now did these twoo Horses of the kin-

The Hystorie

ges. For the euening before duryng the tyme hee fought with the knight, whom hee lewe, this Thiefe had stiched and stolne hym, whiche in following the Damozelles Palfreie all the daie before, was laide doune on the grounde for fainte and feeblenesse: and that morryng beyng determined to gette somewhat by suche as passed by, accordyng to his custome, aperciuyng the king passing that waye, beynge mounted on an other Horse, had greate desire of hym to beare hym compaignye, to the intent to gette that other horse also. And to hysing the chyng he purposed to passe, hee went neighing through the Forrest like an horse, feigning so well the matter, that the king hearyng hym, beleued stedfastly that it was his Horse, whom to pursue he was alighted. But duryng the while he was in the rough Forrest in quest of the same, the Royster was come to take awaie the other, by an other bypath whiche he well knewe.

Wherof the kyng was so vexed and wearie, in that (as a Lackie) it behoued hym to goe a foote, that he beganne to curse and banne the Damosell, whiche was wandered and strayed from hym, repenteynge hym (but to late) of his follie. Notwithstandyng, he traualled so farre a foote (for fallyng here and there, that about Midday he beganne to abandon the Forrest: a mile from the whiche, he mette an Heremite in a louver cornered patche, who kneelyng deuoutely afore the Crosse, read busilie his Martens, with spectacles on his nose: for he was so old and feble, that he sawe but little, in so muche that the Kyng was full nere, afore he could discry hym. But seyng hym armed as he was, the visir of his healme being let doune, he had of hym so great feare, that shinkyng he was some euill Spirite, or Phantasme, began straigtheawes to marke hym selfe with the signe of the Crosse, one while hymself, an other while the Kyng, mumbryng with his mouche many suffrages, and holie Praiers in Latine to coniure him. Which che kyng seyng, & knowyng his feare, to assure hym the better, croke his hedde p̄ce of,

of, & hauing humbly saluted hym, reasoned with hym in this sorte: For Gods sake Father, (saied he) bee you nothyng afflonied of me, for I am nougnt els but as you are: also tell me where I might finde a place to repose my self, and take some refecion: for since yester daie Morwyng, haue I neither eaten nor dronken, whereby I feele my self so feble and weake, that w paine I can vnetch sustaine my self. The good manne Heremite hearyng hym speake of God, hauyng taken courage to hym, aunswered hym in Latine with like woordes: Manne, I knowe not what thou demaundest, but if thou wilce vouchsafe to repose thy self in my little Celle, I will giue thee to drinke water of the cleare Fountaine, whiche is there nere unto vs, and also I haue some Chesnuttes, and rootes of Hearbes boiled since yester night, whereof if thou wilce thou maiest eate. The Rynge whiche vnderstoode Latine, knewe well that he could speake no other waies: wherefore he aunswered hym in the same language, that he was thereof content.

In so muche heyyng come into the Heremites Cell, bee eate with a reasonable good appetite certain Chesnuttes, the whiche the old man gaue hym verie daintely, deemyng by hym self that fewe would suffice hym: after whiche hauyng dronken a good cuppe of the fore saied Fountain water he departed, (not without greate thankes to the Heremite giuen) reasonably well sacisfied, with the substaunce of that sumptuous banquet.

Then did he nothyng but traueil till it was nere nighe, that he arived on the See coste, where he founde a boate, in whiche was a man slepyng full soundly, whom, first hauyng awaked hym, he required if he could transporte hym into any hauen, where he might embarke hym self, to goe to the Realme of Thrace: and the manne aunswered hym, yea: and that he was thereof right well conente: and that same euening he would bryng hym, where he shold bee lodged, in the moste magnificent Castell that euer he sawe. The

The Hystorie

Kyng being ioyous, and right well apaid of so good an hap,
entryng the boate, nothing knowing how to take the wondres
of his Ferrie man : but to sone (alas) he knewe them to
his great damage. For scarce was hee a mile fro the shore,
when he sawe not his man within the boate, well might he
perceiue the Dares to moue, and traile toward the boate,
vpon the waues of the See, with so greate celericie and
swiftnesse, as though some one had moued them : whereof
he was more astonied and abashed, then euer he was of any
other thing, that euer had chaunced in his life. Norwithstan-
ding he yet reioysed somewhat, that the sea was calme, and
quiet, hauyng none other windre to cosse or trouble it but a
sweete and pleasant Zephyrus. And hauyng remained in
this sorte, wandering solely vpon the sea, without trouble
of any Tempest, having nougat to eare but certayne course
bread, peeces wher eof hee founde in the Boate, till such
tyme as hee might discouer and perceiue, in the morwyng
when the Sunne began to shine vpon that parte, where his
vessell pretended to take Lande, a faire Ilande garnished
and munited with a multitude of faire leauie Trees, and
grassie greene Meadowes, and in the midstrherof, approa-
ching nearer and nearer, the hauncie Towers of an excee-
ding faire Castell whiche there was pight. And issyng
soore into the Isle, to finde some one which might tell hym
what Countrey that was, he saw moxouer in one coaste of
the same, the aire as red as flampyng fire. Then muche mar-
uelling what aduenture that myght bee, determined so stille
to walke, till he myght finde one that myght tell him the no-
uelties therof. But hee had not gone paste a Myle, but hee
met with twelue knyghtes armed at all pointes fro head to
foote, and with them a mighty band of villaines, with Bat-
tes and Scaues, armed with greate Jackes and oulde ru-
ste Halberdes, whom hauyng courteously saluted, he was
so hardie as to enquire why the aire was so red in that part
of the Isle wherto he dwellec neere, but they aunswered him,
that

that they were thereof ignoraunte, and that goyng somewhat further he shoulde knowe the certaintie thereof. They scarce had passed hym a bowshoote, but þ they came sodainly and encompassed hym on al partes: and so manie as were there already afore embushed, assaileſt & assaultēd the miserable Prince on all sides. Who willing to defende himself, slewe the twoo friste, which were ouer hastie to lāie handes vpon hym. Neuerthelesse the rest leaping altogether vpon hym with one blowe tooke hym, and depriuyng hym of all defence, bounde him straitly with greate cheanes of vyon. Then leading hym towardes the Castle, whiche hee had ſene, put hym into a moſte ſtrange and wretched p̄izon, where we leue hym to leade a long and miserable life, vntill occation ſerue to ſhewe you the meane of his deliuerie. To the ende that I maye ſette foorth to you, that whiche chaunced to the Noble Queene Bellizone, his wife, whom he had leſte great with childe at his departure.

Of the maruulous dule and ſorow that Bellizone made after the departure, and also during the absence of king Floridamant her ſpouſe: and how beying at Myndoll, as ſhe walked foorth in the Forrest, ſhe traualled of the Infante Gerileon for whiche birth, the Princes Ferrand of Normaine and Dom Grandragon cauſed and addressed Iopites and Turnays, wherin they proteſted to answere all commers, where chaunced a maruolous aduenture, after the whiche, they finished the yre Juftinges, vþher of the ſaide Ferrand and Grandragon bare awaies the price and were victorios.



The Hystoric

The fourth Chapter.



E ver Dido after the departure
of the fugitiue Trojan Aneas,
felte suche griesse in her minde,
neither more was the sorowe of
Phyllis, after the long expectation
of her deare frende Demophoon:
then the noble Queen Bellona,
felte of greuous and vndurable
assaultes; keeping ministred
dailye too her on all sides, by the violence of a multitude of
mortall and vsupportable anguishes & grieses, than whē
she chaunced too thinke of the horrible and boistrous bla-
gues of winde whiche sometimes she hearde beate againste
the Windowes of the pleasaunt Castle of Mirandol, the
showers and Tempes, the mutation of tynies, perilous
Shipwackes, and innumerable daungers, whiche her
Idyall spowse Floridamant endured: She coulde bee in no
place, but loosing all countenaunce and coulour, were she in her Chamber or in her Garden, were she in the pre-
sence or absence of anye one too dñe a wite her dolour and
sadnes) but she did sheede and let fall an infinite number of
teares, whiche gushyng from out her eyes, bedewed with
great droppes along, the delicate and pleasauntes of the
coulour, wherewith her ruddye and Vermilion Cheekes
were polished and aborned. So that in full shorte space, she
became so leane and disformed, as well for not haing gar-
ded her selfe at the beginnyng, from geuyng place to these
grieses and anguishes, as also by seeing the vnaccustoma-
ble annoyes and gryping grieses wherwith the fruite which
she had conceiued in her woumbe daily encreasynge, did op-
presse her, that there was none of her Wards nor knighthes,
whiche thereof was not greatly abashed, but especially
the sage Prince Ferrand of Normaine, who greatlie
foycing

forcyng hym selfe, with many good reasons and comfor-
table admonicions, to appease the vehemensie of her pas-
sions, seeing in the end that he but lost time, leſt that crade,
& deuised to ſtudy & emploie his care wholy to þ gouerne-
ment, of the Realme of great Britaine, as to his charge be-
longed : leauing the olde Grandiaor Duke of Normandie,
for garde to the Queene and her Damoſelles, who neuer
after the departure of the king, had remoued from My-
randoll. Where vpon a daie as ſhe walked alone in the For-
rest, wanderyng from the compagnie of her Ladies and Da-
moſelles, as accustomably ſhe did, to commence her wonted
plaintes and Lamentations in a little Cabinet of White
Thorne, whiche with greate Artificie and industrie ſhe
had purpoſely cauſed to be buildev, by the moſt expert cra-
ftes men ſhe could finde, there chaunced her this picious ad-
uenture, whiche you ſhall heare. It is to be noted, that as
the Queene wene ſo wanderyng by the Forrest, the tearme
natuarly preſixed and ordeined to humaine Creatures, to
abandon and forſake the entrailes of their Mother, to en-
ioye the light of thiſ world, was expired and conſummat,.
allone as ſhe was arived in her Cabinet, (ſo as, before that
ſhe began her complaint, ſhe was intentiue to heare the de-
lectable and pleauant murmuringes, and hushing noisles
of ſweete running Brookes, whiche were there, whiche a
while before were beeome mute, their Waters stayed of
they course, by the heate and rigour of the little heauenly
Dogge, whiche hauing remoued and geuen place to the
Starre moſt moſt, had that daie, as it were deuinely recei-
ued their ſlotyng voyce, and of Birdes whiche than bee-
ing assembled in greate number, did marueilous diſcloſe
the natuarall and melodious Harmonie of their Syuan
Braunchye Songes, accordyng so well, that they ſee-
med of purpose to recreate and bryng ioye to the iuauice
þyrche, of the noble Infaunt Royall, or rather if it were
poſſible, to rawiſhe her harte with ſo greate gladnes, that

D.J. her.

The Hystorie

her sense of hearing, remaining rauished & attatched with
the Echo and resounding of their voyces, she shold feele
lesse trauell in her Childing. She began to feele so gree-
uous a paine, that pressing her belly with her two handes,
homely resting her self againste the banches of a Tree,
supposing her entrailles to be plucked out of her bellie, she
made the most merueilous dule and lamentation that could
bee thought, and betooke her selfe after a while to crie so
shilly, that one of her Damozelles named *Antiziliane*,
daughter to the kyng of Swerchelande, so curiouly tooke
regarde unto her, fearing that whiche had chaunced, that
whicher soever she went, she never so sooke her, and hauing
heard her crie, she ranne diligently thereto. But she could
not so soone arriue, but that she founde her rather dead than
aliue, & stretched along vpon the grene Grasse, whereat she
was much displeased, & yet also ioyous, seeing her deliuered
of a little Babe so faire, large and well featured, that he see-
med not to haue come into the world but to be highly set by.
Whiche she taking in her Armes, after she had washed and
made him cleane in a Riuier, there were at hand, she kissed &
rekissed more then a hundred and a hundred tymes. Then
presentyng hym to his Mother, which tooke hym sweetely
betweene her two Armes, she gaue herself to consolatiō
and recomfort her the best that she could. But she hauing left &
let passe the late & painfull trauaille of her childing, saide to
her with a softe and milde voyce. That she shold with all
spede go to bespeak an Horſe Litter to transpoſt her to þ
Castell, whereto the Damozell sone obeyed, leauyng her
sole & alone in the compagnie of her Neele Infaunt, whō she
began to busse & beholde with a Million & more, of amiable
and motherly looks. And euen as shee earnestlie behelde
hym in euerie parte, she perceiued in him a thing most mer-
ueilous. That is to wit, a little place in his backe drawyng
cowarde the right side, full of heare, and like in purrature
to a fierce and fell Lion, hauyng his Tongue out of his
mouth,

mouche, whereby he had hope that hee shoulde in tyme bee-
come an hardie and valiaunte Knight. Seeyng that there
was none other reason but that nature had brought forth,
signed and marked it in suche forme for some such purpose.
But duryng this thought of hers, beholde there arived
a troupe of Knighes and Damoselles, whiche brought
thither a faire horse litter, all wrought within with Blewe
veluet, who went with greate haste toward the place where
the Queene was: and finding her in the same takynge, that
the Damosell Antiziliane had leste her, listyng her by soft-
ly, laied her in a good bedde whiche was in the Litter, with
the little baby by her, whom her Damosell wrapped & couer-
red with riche clothynges, brought redie for that purposer
which doen, thei quickly conuaied her to the Castell of Ma-
randol. Where thei no soner arived, but the Prince Ferrand
of Morwaie, whiche was in the Citie of London, without
further delaye, with a greate troupe of illustrious and ba-
llaunt knighthes, came to visse her, muche joyous and plea-
sed of so good an aduenture, trusyng that now the Queens
would souer afer, leauue of her grieves and complaints:
who gaue hym in charge to cause the Infant to be baptizyd
whom she would haue to bee named GERILEON, with the
greatest toy and sumptuous preparation, that she could pre-
pare: nor lecynge passe, either Justes, Turneis, or any other
pastymes, whiche could bee inuented. And expressely com-
maunded that those, who for the losse of their Kyng, were
cladde in Blache attire, shoulde exchaunge of them, for o-
thers of diuerse couours moze gaine, and pleasaunt: where-
to thei with all diligence obeyed.

For after the Baptisme of the Infante (the whiche in
greate pompe and magnificence, the Kyng Ferrande of
Morwaie, hym self had holden ouer the Fonte, with the
maide Antiziliane: the one in the name of the Kyng Belli-
gent of Fraunce, who was a greate frende to the Kyng Flo-
ridamant: The other representynge the Persone of the

D.ij. Queene

The Hystorie

Quene of Scotland) they caused to be made ready þ Listes
þin the City of London, in the great place of the Pallacie,
& the next day to make Proclamatiō of the publike Justyn-
ges, on the behalfe of the Prince Ferrande of Noxwaie, and
his couragious cousin Gradior, who in Justing chalēged
all goers & comers for the p̄ice: wherof he prescribed two
gate Genettes of Spaine, white as Swannes, trapped
and harued with Velvet of the same colour, all embro-
dred and wrought with fine golde of Cyprus, wholie to re-
maine to them, whiche were not dishorsed at the Justes.
And theri proclaimed that whosoever shold take in hande
this matche, shold give to the victours one of the fairest,
and moste riche tokens, that ever theri had received of their
Mistresses: and if perchaunce there were founde any, who
hauyng fide and lette his affection, in a place too haultis
and difficile, were so unfortunat in his Loues, that he ne-
uer had received any, he shold bee bounde, and holden to
faste wholie three daies, without either meate or drinke, sa-
uyng breade and water, and he shold fulfill his promise.

þoreouer it was also saied, that all those whiche shold
protest that theri were frē, & exempte fro the flames of loue,
shold goe knele doun before the Damosels of the Quene
Bellizenne, kylling their feete, and the stones in their Ryn-
ges, whiche theri had on theiringers with all humilitie.
Which thing being knowē, every one of the knigthes, who
hearde these Justes proclaimed in so straunge and vndisu-
all condition, saied to the Heraulde, who had to name Gelas-
ſte the Toily: What is that (saith hee) that maie bee doen
in lieu of killynge the Rynge of theiringers, if by chaunce
some of the Dames want them. It shall bee expedient, Sir
knight, no displeasure (saied the Heraulde) that if you be of
the vanquished side, and want a Mistris with Rynge, that
you maye go kille thē, þumye mot where. At this clokes
knaushe aunswere, was greate laughter moued, not onely
to the bystanders, but also to the knight to whom he spake,
who

who, although he sawe hym self mocked) was little or no-
thyng thereat displeased.

But (to come to the matter againe) the Jusynges bee-
yng openly Proclaimed, as is afore saied, one might haue
seen knyghtes of all partes, to prepare theim selues to the
same, on the one side of the Listes : and on the other side the
two braue warriours *Dam Ferrande* of *Noxwaie*, and *Dam
Grandilaor* his *Cosine*, fully determined to make that daie,
suche a proufe of their knyghtly prowesse, that woxthe by
thei shold bee iudged valiaunt at those Jusynges aboue all o-
thers. And especially the young *Grandilaor*, who so felte his
force and strengthe to redouble and encrease, because of a
certayne white Plume of Feathers, whiche he caried vpon
the creste of his Helmet, giuen hym that daie by the Da-
mestell *Amizilane* his Ladie and Mistresse, (for whose
Loue he felte greate tormentes) that vnder her fauour, he
should behau hym self so well at the Jusynges, that he mighc
become hidocious, he entred firsle into the fielde, mounted
vpon a braue courser of *Arabie*, so well trained and paced,
that to se hym manadge, carrie, and braue it in the ayre,
one would haue iudged hym of no lesse desire to the matter:
then his maister: who giuyng hym the spurre finely (as wel
he could) remained so sure and unmoueable in the saddle,
yea, and with suche a grace, that to viewe hym, there was
none of the lookers on, whiche thought not verely that for
his parte, the Prince of that Tournay shold not bee losse.
And the like saied thei of that valiaunt Prince of *Noxwaie*,
who pursued hym full neve: for in prowesse and Chiualrie,
he surpassed eche other knyght of greate Britaine. But as
thei were entred within the Barriers to combate, beholde,
the heauen beganne in lesse then an hower, to waxe so
darke, and too become so troubled with thicke and stin-
king smoke, whiche remained in the ayre, more then a quar-
ter of an howre, that the knyghtes could not see from the
one ende of the Listes to the other: in suche sorte that ther
D. iis. was

The Hystorie

was none so hardie and valiaunt, whiche was not greatly astonished and abashed at this sodaine & straunge mutation of tym: for never any of them that were in that companie, had seen the like chaunce. But yet thei had more cause of maruaile, when after hauyng a while behoden through the the ayre, whiche waxed yet more darcke, especially aboue the Castell, a multitude of hideous flames of fire, as redde as bloud, thei heard suche a terrible and vnaccustomed thuderclappe, that one would haue saied, that Warthan with all the wicked spirates of the internall Spansion, had been assembled to ruinace and plucke dounne the Castell, vnto the verie foundation: whiche straightewaies after, hauyng brought ther c a terrible feare vpon them all, vanished. And beeynge ceassed, the ayre became in lesse then an howre, as cleare and bright as afore. But those that were assembled in a troupe, fould the selues farre dispersed eche fro others, raunged & scattered here & there moxe then a Bowshooter because their horses beeynge afraide of the greate brute, whiche thei had heard, did separate theim selues the one fro the other on euery parte. But seyng an olde Towre, whiche was at the ende of the old walles of the Castel parke, ouer- couered moxe then twoo Foote thick with Iute, some greene, some withered, to bee no more there, gathering theim selues together, thei ran hastly towardes that parte, to see where it was become. And beeynge there arived, thei found it all couered with ashes, & plucked in peeces smaller then duste: as also thei perceived before the gate of the Castell, twoo greate pillars of Marble white and graie, cutte and pight fower square, the moste faire that migh be seen, susteyning theim selues aboue by an arch, moste magniscentlie embossed and grauen with woorkes of Damaskinne, vnder the whiche was the purrature of a Maiden, richely apparelled like a *Nymph*, and so faire that Beautie her self migh not bee named, but by her name: hauyng a smilyng countenaunce, wherein sparced and shined so lively, the glimsyng

of Gerileon. fol. 16.

glimsyng clearnesse of twoo faire eyes, that it was suffi-
cience, to lighten the night before the gate of the Castell,
as though there had beene twoo greate Torches, for that
purpose: and the residue so like a liuyng creature, that no-
thyng but onely speache was in her wantyng. And moxeo-
uer this Maiden had aboute her necke', a greate chaine of
gold, more of waight then a thousande talentes, the which
hanged doun a whole mannes height before her scete. And
at the ende therof hanged a Tablet wrought all about, and
in the middest thereof were written these verses folowyng,
in letters of golde.

*The Lions whelpe beyng stolne awaie once by the Done,
The roiall Egle wold with his becke cruelly,
Pearce through his harte: but yet tholde Lion then set free,
Beyng puissante shall hym gard, shat no mischaunce he prone.*

And in her right hande she had a little scrole, wherein was
written this wodye Oziris, and in her lefte hande she had a
braunche of Oliue: and vpon one of the Pillars, sixe foote
heigh from the grounde, was engrauen in Greeke letters,
the substance of these verses.

*Once enter did the Wolues the Forest thicke into,
With hunger to dehoure the flocke moste fraile and weake:
Likewise the Pastours of the tender yonglynges eke,
Wheroff full many fell, whom preasse did ouerthowre.*

And in the other, after the same maner were these here,
whiche did depende vpon the others, and made perfecte the
sense thereof.

*But the Dragon of whom the Pastour greate is father,
Them chasyng hym beforne, shall rest as conquerour:
Then shall he bee reknowne for sonne to the Pastour,
Whom from extreme mischaunce he shall helpe and deliner.*

But it neuer rested in any of the knighthes powers, who
read and revised it many tymes (whereof there was many
that

1.1.101
The Hystorie

that were well lettered and cunnyng) to know rightly how to enterprete it. Whiche was cause that remainyng mar-
ueilously astonished at this noueltie, they retired all toward
the place where the Listes were prepared, for to finishe their
enterprised Tourney: wherein was many a launce broken,
and many a knight cast to the grounde, by the valiauncie of
the two courageous knyghtes Dom Ferrand of Nozwaie, &
his cosin Dom Grandilaor, wheron many did penaunce, and
that greate, for thre datus space after. And the two Desen-
daunes gained muche fauour of many knyghtes, whiche
there acquired hate and disdaine, in recompence of their
Dames. For there was founde but one, whiche was not a-
morous, and in lone, called Dom Gillant of Barrage, who
was of the number of the twelue courageous knyghtes of
Greate Britaine, moste hardie and cunnyng in his weapon,
but in Justes hee was caste downe to the yearth by Dom
Grandilaor, after the breakynge of lower Staues, without
remouyng himselfe: but at the fiste he was dishoysed where-
with hee was so chaffed and angred, that hee woulde not
performe the decrees of the game. Whiche thyng Grandilaor
seyng, saied to hym: Knyght, will ye not goe kille the
Rynges and feete of the Ladies, as it was accorded before
wee came to the Justes, the one agaynst the other? No, an-
swered Dom Gillant: for I am not boide to doe that agaynst
my will. And presently through the greate displeasure he
therre tooke, he abandoned the Realme of Greate Britaine,
to serche for straunge aduentures. Whiche thyng Ge-
liaeste the toyly seying, who was therre to deliuer Launces to
them that lacked, saied to Grandilaor: For as muche as I
can see(sir) this knyght wil keepe promise, for he wil not let
it goe as yet. Truely he wil keepe it long, saied Grandilaor
smilynglie: for if he frame not hym selfe to accomplitshē o-
therwise, he shoulde haue no power to escape from hym. But
whiles he discoursed thus with the mery & toyly Geliaeste, he
take of hym a Speare, whiche he had in his hande, for that

Dom.

of Gerileon. fol. 17.

Dom Haroalt, whiche also was one of the xiij. couragious knyghtes of the Realme, approuched to runne against him: who seyng hym wch Speare in rest, prickid his Horse wth the spurre, and came runnyng vpō hym (who did the like) so rightly, that makyng their Spores slie i[n] shiners, whiche had touched bothe thair Shieldes, thei verfoured biauely their Course without any maner morayng from the Sadles. Wherfore takyng newe Speares more bigge and strong then the firsle, they came to the shocke againe so fiercely vpō their Shieldes, that their Trunchions fliyng on higb in the ayre, their Steedes mette wth suche a furie, brest against brest, that, that of couragious Heroalt was constrained (as not beeyng so strong as the other) to fall thare doun, and his Maister by hym. Assuring you that if Dom Grandilaor had not strongly reined the heade of his Horse, he had measured hymselfe also on the Earth. But he bare hym selfe there so valiaunely, that his Cousen Ferrand and he remained all the daie victorious, and so well conter-garded them selues from beeyng cast to the grounde, that none had the puissaunce to winne of them, the twoo white Steedes. Wherof (after that the Sunne was gone doun, and euerie one retired home) the valiaunt Grandilaor made a present to his Mistres Antizilane, who therfore thankyng hym humbly, felte her selfe well content and satissfed of so greate a sauour, for they loued one an other greatlie, because that the saide Antizilane was the fairest Damozell in all Britaine the Greate, and Dom Grandilaor one of the moste fine, valiaunt, and hardie knyghtes: as his deedes shall geue you to understande hereafter.

How the Queene Bellizenne caused the yong Gerileon, to be nourished and caught, and of his childishe gentilitie and noble actes in youthe. Duryng whiche tyme, Prince DORIAN of Spaigne, which was gone to seeke after Kyng Floridamant his frende, was dri-

E.J. uen

The Hyfsterie

uen by Tempeste into the Greenie Ile, where he vnderstoode that the Traitor *Mynofoll* did leue an Armie too iuade the Realme of Greate Britaine. Wherefore beeyng gone thether, he slewe the sayde *Mynofoll* at one stroke with a Speare, and with the ayde of the couragious Knights of greate Britaine discomfited all his Hoast. Duryng whiche while, the yong *Gerileo*, lost hymself in the Forest, by pursuyng a Phaisaunte: whereby the Queene through grieues and sorrow outraged, had slaine her selfe, but for the sodaine arriuall of kyng *Floridamant*, who disturbed her in the Acte.

The fift Chapter.



HE Joustynges and Tourneys solemnized in the Cittie of London, for ioye of y late chylde birth of the Queene Belzenne, dured the space of thre daies. In which season the Princes Ferrand and Grandislor made suche证明 of their valiaune promesse & haughtie chivalrie, that they stell rested victours, to the great coementment of the faire Antiziliane. To whom Grandislor gaue all the Jewels by hym conquered, whiche he had wonne of the vanquished knigthes. But at thende thereof, the vertuous Quene hauyng abandoned, and left her chylde, caused them to cease: nor able wholie to forget the sorow and anguishe, whiche the long absence of her loyall spouse brought unto her, but onely at suche tymes as she takyng her litle Infante betwene her armes, to yelde some release to her dolour. She embraced hym with a multitude of beholdinges & killes, coming of natural louer. Not knowing whether she ought to waile the long and ykesome

besome absence of her husband (although not wholy boyde
 of hope to see hym once againe) or rather to reioyce and
 content her selfe with so luckie a burthen. And in this per-
 plxitie she remained moxe then twoo yeres, now sad, nowe
 somewhat merite, liuyng still and sustanyng her self by the
 foode of a certein hope, whiche yet sometyme fed her with
 some consolac[i]o[n]. During whiche tyme, she was so curious,
 and tooke so great heve, well to nourishe & b[a]rauely to bring
 vp the yong Gerileon, that at twoo yeres endes, he was so big
 and toyly, that already he could both goe and run: and p[re]act-
 ed so pretily, that he could demaund and aske for what ere
 he would haue. In so muche, that eche one conjectured muche
 of his future bositie and valour, by his yong childishe attes,
 accompanied with such a naturall gentilitie and magna-
 nimitie: whiche in hym, within processe of tyme, had suche
 an encreasement, that they seemed to surpass the selfe same
 course of his tender and yong yeres. For scarcely had he ar-
 rived to the fourch yere of his age, but that if by chaunce he
 sawe any one beynge dolefull and sad to lament, he had ther-
 of so greate compassion, that knowing the cause of his do-
 lour, he endeouored to recomforst him the best that he could,
 offering him all that he had for his contentemente, and espe-
 ciallie to the Queene his mother, to whom, on a daie when
 she heald hym on her Lappe, hearing her geue a profounde
 sigh, he spake mesme gentlie on this sorte, and saied: Madam
 what ayleth you? I p[re]iae you tell mee why you sigh? Is
 there any that hath gauen you occasio[n] of being angrie? For
 if it bee so, I assure you it shall not bee vnuenged. The
 Queene hearyng hym speake with so good a grace, began
 to smile at his childishe wordes, who with suche and other
 like matters yelde often most great lighenyng to her pas-
 sions and distresses.

Moreouer, he never remained idle: and mosme commonly
 one shoulde finde hym, either neere to some horse, wherevpon
 (leadynge hym to some blocke, or suche like thing) he set him

E. i. selse

The Hyfstorie

self with so good a grace, that at sight thereof a man would haue iudged hym, to haue been the moste dexterous squire or knight of all greate Britaine: or els takynge a Scarfe, he wente to assaile some one or other, to trie hym self that was agaist hym: to whom, albeit he surpassed hym in bignesse of bodie, yet he caught hym some tymes, by his nimblenesse and actiuicie, such harde blowes, that comanonly he was forced, to plaie double or quittte with hym. For in the science of Defence thei trained, and brought hym by so curiostie, that at lasse he was therein as experie, not onely as his teachers, but also as any other in the world in his tyme. Then againe with a Dartt in hande, he wente traçyng through the Forest to finde some wilde beastes: without feare of the whiche, no more then if thei had been Dogges, if perchaunce he recountred any, he pursued theim so faste in the Forest: that often tymes the Quene, whiche never was at ease, he beyng out of sight, sette and sent folkes every waie to seeke hym.

But what shold I thus muche striue, to discourse upon this point: seyng that as it is found by the wrtinges of the Chronicler Galarx, one can not recite any thyng fitte and conuenient, to an harte fraight with noblenesse and generosicie, to whiche, this little prince applied not his minde: and behaued hym self so well in all his childly enterprises, that makynge them tende to some gentle ende, he seemed rather a man of ripe iudgemente, then a s billesse Child and Infant.

Duryng the tyme that the yonge boye Gerileon thus increased, bothe in age, vertue, strengthe, and gentlenesse of Spirite, the Queene his mother had made enquirie on all partes, as well for her brother Hubert of Scotland, whose losse brought muche annoye to many, as also for the good knyghtes Candior, Grandilaor, Acciall of Surrye, Sylban of Flanders, Melcior, and many others of the couragiouse of Greate Britaine, to knowe the cause of the long a煢ode (which so muche annoied her) of king Floridamant who
beyng,

being sent out to seke him towardes al partes of the earth,
could in nowise heare any newes of hym. Whiche thing be-
yng come to the eares of Prince Dorian of Spain, he was
(by reason of the feruent loue he had to hym) so distressed for
his losse, that he vowed and sware, never to slepe quietly, or
in good rest, vntill suche tyme as he myght heare some ne-
wes of hym: in so muche that making inquirie for hym, he
wet first into Thrace, where hauyng heard nothyng of hym,
he put hym self on the sea, to returne to Greate Britaine, or
to some other countre farther of. But he was surprised by
a marueilous and horrible tempeste, whose blastes after a
while, caused his Bark to be cast on shore in þ Grene Isle:
where by a Cloune of the same coast, he was assured, that for
certaintie, the traitour Necromancien Minofel helde, and
had hym in his prison of the Redde Castle enchaunted, and
caused hym dately to bee whippid, and beaten by five or sixe
villaines, with greate and bigge coardes, all to make hym
miserably languishe till the ende of his daies: and he knew
moreouer that he adressed a greate Armie by Sea, traicio-
rouly to inuade the realme of Greate Britaine: but he fa-
iled of his enterprise. Soþ the Prince Dorian beyng retayred
from thence, and hauyng made certificates of all these thy-
nges to the good kyng of Norwai, and the reste of the cou-
ragious of Greate Britaine, thei remedied the matter so
well, and gaue so good order to their affaires, that the saied
Minofel beyyng slaine by the handes of the saied Prince
Dorian, who in the skirmishe encoutered hym, and thrusse
his Speare through his bodie; that his folkes were forced,
with greate slaughter and bloudshed, shame and perpetuall
dishonour, to retourne from whence thei came.

And these thynges thus doen, while thei for the recou-
rie of their kyng were busied, to furnishe and see for the cer-
taine shippes of warre, to passe into the Grene Isle: it came
to passe that the young boi Gerileon, of whom none as then
ooke gardie of, going one morning to walke in the Fo-

The Hyistorie

test, hauyng a litle bowe of Basill in his hande, wherewith he occupied himself so wel, that he killed many birdes as well grante as small, he perceiued by chaunce a Pheasant, whiche sat not far of: which as he nocked one of his arrowes so shace at her, she flewe a litle forwarde. The boye verie desirous to haue her, seyng her so faire & brauely feathred abone the rest, pursued her: and seyng that she sat more nere hym, and seemed better then afore, he set again the head of his arrowe against her: the birde seyng her self manased flew her a litle farther. The boye, in hope to haue her, pursued her still from tree to tree, & were it with chace or sight, he never left her: till that beynge gredie of y game, the birde hauyng brought hym in fine by litle and litle, farre into the thickest of the Forest, did vanishe awaie, in so muche he knewe not where she was become, for in no place that he could caste his eye, he could not see her. Whereof he was so sorrowfull and vexed, that he brake bothe his bowe and arrowes, rentyng and pluckyng in peices the quicke, whiche hanged by his side, through the greate ire and spite he had: as well for that, not hauyng obtained the pheasant, as for that he could neither finde again the waie, by the whiche he came thether, nor any other path to returne out thesse. And seyng this, after he had remained long pensive, sittynge on the greene grasse, bedewed with abundance of teares, he fell on sleape, leanyng his heade against a tree. And so long he remained in that place, that neither the Queene, nor any of her house, knowyng where he was become, for that the Sunne drewe alreadie downwardes, and that all the daie, since morayng he had not been seen of any bodie, caused quickly to mounte on horsebacke, the couragious Knights Herold, and Accial of Surrie, to go one waie, to see if they could finde hym, and Dom Candior, with his sonne Sylban of Flanders, an other waie: who hauyng done greate diligence in searchyng hym, wer forced to returne. the Sunne hauyng suffered the daycke and shadie brightnesse of the Starres,

Starres to appere in the heauenly Taute, without hearing any thyng of hym. Whereof it needeth not bee shewed, if the Queene were passioned and greeued, or noe. For of all that night it was not possible, that shee coulde geue place to any one totte of rest: but weeping and lamentynge bitterlie, she made suche pitefull complainces and lamentacions, accompanied with suche a number of skaldyng Teares, whiche issued abundanelie out of her faire eyes, that there was no hearte so hearde, fell or cruell, that therof would not haue taken pittie and compassion.

In so muche that for feare whiche I haue to moue you to bewepe her greate dolour (seeyng that I striue not but to stirre you to pleasure) I am content to set my selfe to shewe them here: for the seuerre Medea apperelinge her selfe abandoned of her frende Jason, or Thisbe in the Bosome of her beloued Pyramus, finding him dead, did not sende so manie sorrowfull sighes, sobbes, and pitefull complaints, as that night boyled from the breaste, eyes, and mouth of this vertuous D^rincesse, for the losse of h^t Infant. And I boldlie helene, (that althoough of magnanymous and haughtie courage, yet had it not been for the Princes Candior and Grandior, who pained themselues still aboue her with double diligence (as they saie) to mitigate and diminishe the vehemencie of her anguish) with her proper handes, like Lucretia, for losse of her chasttie, she had made an ende both of her life, and lothesomre languishing dolours. But these wise Princes did so muche, that promising her to finde him out the nexte daie, theri somewhat appeased these first motions of her anguish: in so muche that after she was wch care couched vpon her baw, appareled as she was, she fell a slepe vntill the nexte morwyngh that so was already rousyd and remoued far fro the lodgyngh of his Leman Aurora: at which tyme she awaked, so wearie, wasted and weakenyd with the force of the forepassed plaintes, that scarce she could lifte vp her heauie head from the painefull pillow. Then deaigning

The Hystorio

dyng if her sonne were yet founde; and baying miswred by
 the Damozell Amziliane (who kepte her selfe continually
 nere to her Grace, for feare of her miscariyng through the
 multitude of these mischaunes) that he was not as yet re-
 courned. Ah (saied she) then let me goe se, if I mae be more
 fortunate in fydynge of hym then the rest, in hōpe to haue
 hym shoulde in the place where my fancie so gettēles med he
 is: for in sleepe it was shewē me, where and how he was to
 be founde, laide vnder a Tree. And taking secretlie a knifē,
 unperceiued of any, she conuaitēd it vnder her Kirtle, and
 framid her foote steppes towarde the Foreste, to a Place
 the most chiche, darke and desert therof. And then with her
 twoo handes rentyng and tearing her yealowe heare, and
 piteously complainyng, she beganne her lamentacions on
 this maner.

" Alas, (saied she) what may this meane, that then, when
 " I thinke to se the brightnes of my felicitie, I enter and am
 " plounged more further in the obscure and darksome dom-
 " pes of my distresse and mishap: and hoping to reioice at one
 " happye and fortunate nauigation, by the gleampynge of a so-
 " of fraudulent and deceiptfull light, whiche was to me apa-
 " raunt, I seele my self frustrated, of mine esperauance, coue-
 " red and ingulped in the profoundesse place of ioylesse in-
 " undations, and ragynge Riuers, moued and stirred vp by
 " the horrible blastes of the mooste vehement windes, vpon
 " the Seas of the anguishes, sorowes, and pittes of myne
 " impoortable paines. O mutabile and iuconstaunce Fortune,
 " mae it be, that thou shouldest bombe so vehementlie on me
 " the venime and rage of thy rigoroud and naughtie nature,
 " that after haupng been so benigne and fauourable unto me,
 " as to make me by birthe the daughter of a kyng and migh-
 " tie Monarque, and ioyned by the blessed bande of Mariage
 " to one mooste famous and triumphaunt, and also to bee Mo-
 " ther to the fairest and gentlest infante, that euer nature fra-
 " med or brought forth into the worlde. Thou makest me to
 " abandon

abandon the one, and despisest mee of both the other, by
 thy false treacherie and Treason, the more to tolle and tor-
 ment mee in the middest of these Mundane Mortions, and
 terreine enticementes, wherein thou sufferest nothyng to
 be durable and permanene. No no, I assure thee, that thou
 shalt no more abuse mee by thy subtile and deceitfull altera-
 tions, in this worlde: for I goe in despite of thee, to re-
 ceive in celestiall chinges more ioye and gladnesse, then in
 terreine and mundane influences, thou hast made mee cast of
 forrowe and sadnesse, deliuering mee by this meanes from
 the Squares whiche thou layest from daye to daye, to make
 mee languishe: hoping that thers I maie yet somewhat re-
 ioyce in the feliciteis of seeing my deere Mate Floridamant,
 and my litle Infaunt Gerileon, who upon his Fathers losse,
 yet gaue me some allegiance. But alas, what is it that I
 will doe, and if peraduenture my deere Spouse deliuered
 from the pernicious prisons, wherin the accursed and trai-
 terous euchaunter *Mynof* hath caused him liue so misera-
 bly, recoure: and my Sonne be found by some one who nou-
 rishing & garding him moxcharely thē I haue done, come
 in processe of tymē, as possible it is þ he may, what will they
 say if I miscarp, descāting my incōueniences? Do I doubt,
 but that besides þ they shall be outraged in greeuous dolor
 and distresse, thei wil not haue mee in reputation of a foole,
 frantike and voyde of wit? But wretche that I am (saide
 she next, scriching and groning bitterlie, and taking in her
 right hand, the Glaine whiche she kept couerty under her
 kirtell) why delay I so long from keeping of them compa-
 nie, slackyng the aduauncement of my trespassse, by cer-
 taine friuolous fantasies, and trifling thoughtes: bee they
 in the vicer profounditie of Hell, or in a Mansion more hie
 eleuate of the Elysian Fieldes? Seeing that if they were
 aliue, they would not protract so muche tymē to come see
 mee. Wherefore that whiche euē now I thought, not bee-
 yng possible to be true, receive O God pitifull & mercifull,

F. J. receive

receiue with hartie pracie I beseech thee, after that I haue
haue pearced my breast with this blade, byng my delicate
and tender handes in mine owne warme blode my sprit
into thy power.

And as she caught her arme backe, to giue the deadlie
dunce, she felte one who forced her to stalle the same: and loo-
king backe she beheld a knight all arm'd, who taking from
her cruell handes the knife, couragiously embrased her be-
tweene his armes, saying: O my good Ladie, what is this
that you will doe, both to your owne great damage, and my
great discōtentment? Ah knight (said she) of al lous, if thou
bee desirous, of luche and felicitie, of Ladies and Damosel-
les afflicted, discouerce me not frō myne enterprise. But for
all that the Knight, holdyng and embracyng still her necke
with his tender armes, staid not from kisstyng her: whiche
caused her castynge her sight on hym, to knowe that he was
her deare and loial spouse Floridamanc: whom she embrased
incontinently by the middle of the body, kisstyng and rekis-
sing hym aboue an hundred times, and to be so danted with
the chaunce and rauished with ioye, that she seemed to sounde
for gladsomness. And not wellknowyng whether she dreame-
red, or whether it were true, þ she held betwene her handes
the thyng, whiche aboue all other she had so long desired, &
attenbed so, she could not bring forthe one word, insomuch
that the kyng much marueled at so straunge aduenture, de-
maunding of her the cause of her doloure & distresse: which
she could not conceale from him, but made him partaker of
all her fortune, frō pointe to pointe, with the losse of her lit-
tle Inſance, wherof he was maruellously displeased and so-
rie. Neuertheleſſe, as one to whom the valiaunce and ma-
gnanimitie of courage neuer failed, he framed hymſelfe to
cōfōrte her in the b̄t fashion he could, saying: And well, my
deverlyng, leyng that it hath pleased God, to take the Inſane,
whoni he hath lent to you, thereby (as it seemed) to reſerue
your life till my retourne, it standes you upon, with paciēce
to

of Gerileon.

fol.22.

to thanke his highnesse humble:seyng wee haue noughe in
this wold, whiche is not all to hym appertainyng , and
whiche hee may not distribuite at his diuine pleasure and
will : And also that you shoulde thinke , that (thankes bee
to hym)wee haue the cooles and instrumentes, whiche nei-
ther are worne nor wasted, to wooke an other withall, whē
it shall please hym to imparre that grace vpon vs. At these
laste wooddes the Quene was readie to laugh, and smilyng-
ly takyngh hym by the hande, lead hym cowarde the Castell:
whiche was not farre distaunte from thence, where we will
leane hym for a while, to tel you what hapened to the young
Gerileon, whom wee haue leſſe a sleepe vnder a Tree in the
Forreste.



Ozaris a Ladie of the Fayries, who hauyng taken the
forme of a Phaisante, had ledde astraiie the little *Gerileon* in the Forreste, sente twoo faire Nymphes *Naiades* to seeke hym, who kepte their residence in a
goodly Fountain, which was in the wooddes of Cy-
pres, the whiche Nymphes brought hym within a
gorgeous palacie where she remained, and laied him
to rest vpon a bed:from the whiche after that he was
arisen, the Faerie sent hym by her Damgzelles into a
gaie garden , wherein was the fountaine of the *Naiades*, who seyng hym so faire, made hym greate ent-
ertainment, and with this pleasure and content-
mente, she nourished hym long.

The viij. Chapiter.

ſ.ij.

Who

22.10
The Hystorie



Iha so shall chaunce to reade the contentes of the Chapter aforegoyng, perchaunce maie be much amazed in that the yong Gerileon remained so long a sleape within the Foresete, where we leste hym: whereof thei might haue iuste occasion, if so it had stooode, that he had been there resident vntill the next daie, when as the Quene Bellizenne would haue slaine her self. But the historie saith, that after he had remained there the space of an hower, surpassed with a profounde and forgetfull sleape: there were twoo faire Nymphes (of those commonly called Naiades, which dwelled and had their habitations, within a faire Fountaine, which was in the middest of a little woodde of Ciprus , at the side of the Foresete, wherein none durst enter, whatsoeuer. For that that those whiche therein entred, were transformed into saluage beastes, by the enchauntmente of a Falerie named Oziris, who was Dame and Mistresse, aswell of the woodde of Ciprus, and of the Fountaine, as also of the Nymphes whereof wee speake (whiche by her comandaumente came quickly, to take the little pouche in place where he slepte, and without awaking, brought hym into the fairest Castell, that euer one could name, wherein the Fairie Oziris had her residence: and when thei had brought hym on this sorte, they put hym in a chamber, the mooste faire that might bee imagined, and couched hym vppon the fairest and costliest bedde of the worlde (if wee maie say so). For the Fairie had with her owne handes wrought, and framed all the furniture, and garnishementes of the same, of the mooste riche and faire stoffe then to bee founde.

And after that they had put hym to reste, at his ease on this Manner, he so remained more then an hower, without awaking, but after a while whe he opened his eyes, he was

so transported with admiration, and rauished with maruell; that he knew not what to thinke: nor so that he found hym selfe now out of the wood where he was afore a sleepe, (for why he wished not to be there,) but to see suche stoe of substaunce, rare riches and pleasaunte Pictures painced, and pight within that Chamber: whiche curioullie too contempnate (without care either to retourne to the Foreste Chase, or home to his Mother in that thereof he had no regard) he secked hym selfe loschis to discende from of the bed, whereon he late, and setting hande on side (as they saie) beganne to walke along the Chamber, earnestly bewyng the walles of the same, wherat he was astonied to see þ puttre-ture wherwith it was embolished & decked muche magnificencie. For the Fayres there had framed the fairest Tables and best made, that ever the excellent Painter Apelles, had portrated. And amongest the reste, the Effigie of Venus, whiche he had begonne before his death, which never none durst presume to finissh, but only our Painter which the Fairie had in her societie, farre surpassing him: who had so adornd it with lively curiosite of coulours, that in seeing the same, one woulde haue affirmed it aliue. In contemplation of the same, rested the little young Gerileon so rauished with maruell, that hee was in doubt whether it were painced or aliue, couloured or quicke, senceles or sensiu: whereupon hee was at laste determined to aske her what she did there: and despyng enceryng the Hall, a Damozell apparelled like a Nymph, who appyoaching neere to hym, tooke him by the hand, and led him into a great Hall, where she gaue hym to eate and drinke of most fine victualles, and wines, pleasaunter and sweeter, then the verie Ambrosia or Nectar it selfe, with whiche the Gods (as Poecetes faine) fedde themselves in heauen. Wherof he was so well apaide, and ioyous, that hee did nought but kippid, daunced and coursed along the Hall, when as there entered a Damozell dressed in sumptuous apparell, being of surpassing beautie &

The Hystorie

grace of countenaunce, aboue the rest: whom the youth hauing estryed, salued with humble reuerence, and hastynge bouldly to embrase her, salde to her: Madame, will you doe as I doo, and take some repas here with mee: I will giue you fayre bread as I haue here in my hande, better I beleue then euer you callid of. Then the Dame (whiche was the Faire Ozyris) taking him betweene her armes, killed him most amouerously, saying: wanton, and wil you not remayne with mee still? yes forsooth Madame (said he) and whither shall I goe then?

But histen: you muste giue me a little horse, and a ppetie speare and sworde, whiche is good for me, and some darpes, and boundes to hunte withall in the Foreste: Truely my Sonne (saide the Faire) you shall haue all this and more, and then he made her Damozell to take hym, who led hym to walke in a faire garden: wherein beyng come, he began curioulie to vewe & beholde, the sundrie shewes of wrokes, wherewith the plottes of the same were finelie enterlaced, and couered with all kinde of good hearbes, whiche continually kept their naturall verdure and greenesse: and of faire flowers so odorous and sweete, that it was a singular solace to smell them, and a passing pleasure to beholde them. And after that bee had a long while surued them, the Damozelles houlding hym by the hande, brought hym to the brimme of a faire Fountaine, the whiche conueniallie rasse vpp water by more then twelue Conduites, whiche wattered all the Garden, passing so pleasauncely by an infinite number of galaunc rivers, that with their murmuring fal, they gaue great rejoycement and recreation to the eares of the hearers. Within this same were the Nymphes Naiades, Ministers of Madame Ozyris, the fairest of whom (who was called Egale) came and tooke the Infant betweene her armes, and killed hym moe then a thousande tymes. The youth finding her faire in perfection, misliked nought thereof, but putting his litle Duoyr hande within her

her blablaſter boſome, rekiſſed her ſtill in ſuſhe force, that
the oþer ſthen being deſirous of ſuſhe wantonneſſe, came
ſwiftly to caſſe him from thole ſweete Armes of hers, co-
uered with a little creſpe fastened there, through whiche
therre appeared a ſkinne ſurpaſſing the ſnoſme in white-
neſſe. One of the whiche bound bypon his head a Noſtegate
of Azure coulour: another a purple flower, the thirde gaue
him a gallant Shirte, composed and wrought with her
proper handes, the beſt that could be made. To be ſhorter, I
knowe not, neithere can I well diſcloſe to you, oþer here re-
count the halfe (without theron employing too long time)
al the ſingularitieſ either of the Garden and Fountaines, a-
ſoſeſaue, oþer of the multitudine of conueniences and pleau-
reſ, whiche the Nymphes tooke in dalliaunce with this li-
tle deity God: Alluring you, that if he had beene ſomewhaſ
moſe of ſtature, he had become an husband to ſome of them.
For they loued hym ſo well, that they could neuer conſeue
themſelues without his company. And I duely deeme that
the Goodwife Catherine, never loued ſo the Dame of Cyrena,
King of Cypris myrrie Mirrie, as theſe Nymphes cheriſhed
this little youth Gerileon, who dured a long ſeafon with ſo-
lace and deliſes in thiſe eſteſiall Paradiſe, afore he had oc-
caſion of iuſtiſhing any ykeſomues ayp wate. For, if he were
not in the Garden in the company of the Naiades, hee was
in the pallare peruuing ſome pleauant, oþer proſeable booke
of Hystories, or the Warres of the Grecians, Troians and
Romaines, as þe Illades of Homer, the Aeneides of Virgil, the
Commentaries of Cefar, oþer ſome ſuſhe like, oþer elſe he ſkir-
mished againſt ſome one: for therre was the faireſt place for
that purpoſe in all the world, oþer elſe he occupied himſelf in þ
woodes, ſomewhiles to affaire himſelfe to ſit an Horſe, which
he guided ſo well as was poſſible, oþer elſe to purſue the yce-
tle Birdes, with a þane Siluer Bowe, whiche the Nym-
phes had geuen hym, hauyng his Quiver well garniſhed
with Arrowes, wherwith he could well behauie himſelle, ei-
ther

The Hystorie

ther after the Hare or Harte, wilde Boare, or other Beast of the p[ar]te, were he never so fiercer: and quicke him selfe so well with the helpe of his houndes (all whiche were most expert in that emploie) that there was noe Harte so swifte, nor Roebucke so nimble in the course, to whom with small pursuite he gane not the overchowme.

¶ And there was neither Beare, nor wilde woodde Boare, whom after hauying sett led most sharpe assauces with his Arrowes, or Dartes, he made not take by slight, or left not streched starkē dead vpon the Grasse. In so muche that one daie as he wene to hunte in the Forrest, beholding his houndes with his Horne of wood, hangynge aboue his heade, most finely wrought and wrapped in a Scarfe, with rich Chaunes of Golde, ther comys a fierce Lyon, which at the noyse of the horne issued out of a Thicker: whom he hauing seen, endeudored to strike hym with a myghtie Dart, whiche he helde in his hande: but the Lyon (whiche is the most noble and gentle of all other beastes) began in signe of humilitie to encline his head vounre to the earth, & pacynge softly towardes hym, came to kisse hym, & with greate fauour to liche his feete, and to sawne vppon hym, as though bee had been euer acquainted with hym. The Yough without anye astonishment, seeing hym so meeke and humble, without doyng hym any harme, tooke hym by the eare, and led hym towardes the Castle, to the place where the Faerie was, to whom bee saide: Madame, see I prate you what a kinde of Dogge I haue founde in the Forrest. O my Sonne (saide the Faerie) that is neither Dogge, neithir Lion, whereof he hath the forme: but certes it is the Squire, whiche (I meane) shal serue you when you shall be a knight. And how can that be (saide he) seeyng he hath neithir feete nor handes, would you haue hym serue mee with these gripes and perilous Pawes. I will soone make hym finde (replied he Faerie) both feete and handes, when tym shall serue to vse them. Then the yough without saying to her any more, returned

tourned into the Forrest, where hee had left his Houndes: whom he founde devouring a greate Harre which they had taken, and had welnere eaten by: but the Lyon whiche followed him then and euer after, terrifyng and making them flee from about the piaie, devoured the reste in lesse then an hower. Much was þ life which the young youth *Gerileon* led in his Infancie in the compagnie of the Fairie *Oziris* and her Nymphes *Naiades*, with all the honest entertainment and exercise, mette and decent to a young Infant, wel borne & issued from so noble a stocke as he was: whom we will let passe there in such sorte certeine yeres of his Adolescencie, to recompt unto you that which happened to king *Floridamant* his father, after that he was deliuerned from Prison, and by what meanes he escaped thence.

By what meanes the Kinge *Floridamant* was deliuerned from prison in the red Castell, for cause of whose detinunce and ariuall, were apointed Iusting & Tournies, wherein the King himselfe bare awaie the price: whervpon the Image of the Fairy *Oziris*, which was before the Portall of the Pallace, gaue him the Olieue braunche whiche she helde in her hande, & than vanished away incotinently. And how the king made a sumptuous feast, during the whiche, the Prince *Gramdilao* moued many amorous matters to the Maiden *Anterihane*, whiche thinges beeyng in doyng, there entred into the Hall a Page whiche brought a Letter to *Dorian*, Prince of Spayne, who straight waies after departed the Courte.

The seventh Chapter.

NO V. haue heretofore hearde, howe the Queene Belluzenne, vpon the intollerable paine she suffered, as well for the absence of the king *Floridamant*, as for the losse of her litle Sonne *Gerileon*,

G.i. leon,

The Hystorie

leon, was at pointe to kill her self, where she was disturbed and letted of her enterprise, by the ariuall of king Floridamant. Who seyng her come comforlesse and sad so sorow chzrough the Forrest, helde hymself hid behinde a bushe, to marke what she would saie, and to see what she pretended to perpetrate. And not to giue cause of abashment to the Reader in this aduenture, but to giue hym to understande how she should come then thereth with such oportunitie, seyng that (as we haue afore said) he was in the prison of the traitor Minofoll, how it came to passe we will shewe. It is to be understood, that the redde Castle wherein he was emprisoned, was builded (as you haue afore hearde) by the Enchauncementes and diabolicall coniurations of the Necromantian Minofol, wholie to woake this seate: the whiche Enchauncementes could never take ende, but by the onely death of the Enchaunter hymself. Therevpon the valiant Prince Dorian, sonne to the Kyng of Spaine, encountered the saied Minofoll in a mightie Battaille, whiche you haue seen so sufficiencely written in the fiftie Chapiter, and so transperced his body with his spere, that he then and thersin shed bothe his life and enchauncementes. Therupon the kyng seyng hymself delinered from so miserable a Prison, after hauyng secretly seised vpon some Harness, whiche he founde in the chamber of the Magicien, withoute staine, made such a spoile and slaughter of those which he could encoller, that it was terrible to be tolde. Then taking his wates toward Great Britain, wherin he found aduenture worthy reciall, he had deliberated before his goyng to the Cittie of London, to sojourne certaine daies at Mirandoll: but as he appioached neere therinto, he encountered the Quene Bellizenne, in th' estate as you haue afore heard: with whō after his abode there about þ space of fyfene or sixtene daies, not without great Joy of all his Barons, Knights, and other Subiectes, and chiefly also of the Princes Hubert of Scotlante and Dorian of Spaine, who were at London when

he

he arived, he went to the Citie, into the whiche he entred moste roially and magnificently: where were in signe of ioye adressed Justinges & Tourneis, for the loue of ladies, wher- tu it is not to be doubted if the Scottish & Spanishe Princes gaue not cleare testimonie to the Worthies of Grete Britain, of their haughte chualtrie, in that there was none whom thei pitched not out of their Sadelles, to take their measure on the grounde, and that was the kyng Ferrand of Normaie, whom the valianc Prince Hubert dishoysed after the breache of viij. Speares, and at the viij. thewe him to the grounde: he wheet, not without streynyngh hymself to forsake the Saitope s. And the yonge Grandilaor also after hauyng hardelie assaied to abbatte and beate doun the Prince of Spaine, was forced to kille the grounde hymself, in his owne proper persone, to the no small griefe of the Dam- zell Antiziliane, who was thereof noe lesse abashed then the Queene Bellizenne was glad and ioyous, when as she sawe the kyng Floridamant. Who beholdyng all the knigh- tes so beaten doun by twoo straigars, came in Habite and harnes vñknowen, to assaie them bothe, the one after the o- ther, neverthelesse not without greate difficulete and brea- king of many speares. Which knighthes not knowyng hym whiche had them so hardly handled, desired to come to com- batte at the sharpe, excusing them selues by the feeble wea- rines of their Horses. But the king (of whose passing pro- fowdes thei were notyng ignorance) beyng discouered and knownen, thei ceassed and moderated their maruaile and greate Melancholy. And the Justinges beyng thus ended, thei ledde hym to rest, and refreshed hym self in his Pallace. But so as hee marched before all the rest, hauyng the Princes Hubart and Dorian, the one on his righte side, the other on his lefte, he was altogether astonished, when en- tryng by the greate porce of the Pallace, he aperceiuued the triumphant Pillers of Marble, whiche during his absence had been chicher sent and set by the craftie commyng of the

The Hystorie

beautifull Fappie Oziris. The effigie of whom her selfe,
was sette vppon the chiese pilier, whiche heide it (hauing
a Chaine of Golde hangyng aboue her Necke, with a
Scrolle thereto annexed, and a Roolette, with a Brauncie
of Olie whiche she helde in the one and the other of her
handes, in forme as you haue hearde afore. But there was
muche more occasion of astonishment, when hee leuelyn
his bwe on hie to contemplate the cleare brightnes which
issued out of the eyes of the said Image (which till then had
rested immouable) he perceiued her to encline downeward,
and to presence hym with the Olie Brauncie, whiche she
bare in her right hand. Whiche brauncie as soone as he had
receiued, there rose a sodaine marueilous Lightening, with
a terrible Thunderclap, which was dispersed and vanished
all soone awaie, together with the Image: whereat all the
Troupe wonderfully was amazed & chescly þ king, who as
yet knew nothing of this enchantment: but enquiring more
of the maister, all the proces thereof was to hym recouered
by those, which were there thā, where it first happened, who
did not also forget to declare unto him þ great feare, which
they had that daie. Then withoute further enquirie, he ente-
red into the Halle, where they had couered the Tables for
dinner: accōpanied with a great multitude of his Barons,
frendes, & knyghches, of whom, ecb one placed hymself at the
table, some on hie, some in the middest, & some belowe accord-
ing to their honourable degrās. Where if thei were well-
bled & serued with all sortes of Meates exquisite, I leue that
to those to shan whiche knowe how greate Ringes and li-
berall Princes are accustomed to feast their frendes, and to
geue enterainmente to chose whom they fauour and loue:
withoute omitting, to tell you how when they had dined, the
pleasaunt Daunces of all sortes, as Pauins, Galliardes,
Measures, Battachines, Moresques and other suche like,
with Pummeries of a marueilous straunge fashyon, and
vniuersal maner, were not there wantyng: and the exercise
of

of the Cyprian Infant, was in no wise there forbidden the. For I am assured, that there was none, who duryng the tyme, that the others daunced drawing to her whō emong the Ladies he besele affectioned, remained without kissyng, and embrasyng her, with many an amourours tope, and delectable deuice: lettyng her (perchaunce) to understand, his Martynedom, (if thereof he had aforeshande any hid within the marrowe of his mynd) thereby to receiue some cōfort & ease. But I beleue, that the Dames and Ladies, belonging to the Queene Bellizenne, and other greate Princes at that feaste presente, were so honest, that for motionyng thereof, it was but losse time. For those that were ledde by the onely affection, and ardente desire, whiche thei had to enioye the pleasure commonlie (as it is called) amourous, or rather (as some would tearme it) a taste of close contentacion, by some amicie more sincere, and to an other better intention, so secrete and cruell, that with all honest endeouour, thei enforce not themselues possibly to staunch the ardēcie, and appease the fire, whiche their seruautes affirme dooe consume, and make theim dye a thousande tymes a daie, through their blasynge beauties. But there were such com-plainte within the Hall, and in eche bypache of the Pallace, þ I dare not assure you, whether there were any one (per-chaunce) more pitifull then the reste, who retynynge her self with her mate, behinde the hangynges of some cappissarie, or other secrete Warderobe, to barre the sight or hearyng of any persone, were not euuen there amoued with compas-sion of his desease, who more fild in speach (peraduenture) then his fellowes, had preached to her so well, that present-ly she applied not a Cataplasme or plaister, necessarie to his needie wounde. Neuerthelesse, I am not ignoraunte, that the Prince Grandisior was in one corner of the Hall, all alone with her, whose shinyng beauteie by fites hadde hym liue, or made hym dye at pleasure, that is to witte, the Damozelle Artiziliane whom he helde betwene his armes, not

The Hystorie

daring to open and discouer the entiere and behement passion , whiche without ceassynge tormentid hym: whether it were because he was shamefast in shewyng it , or rather for that he doubted her displeasure and refusall, if ther vpon he made any disgression, too tedious for her tender stomacke. But in fine, the sharpnes and rigour of his ragyng fire, burning the veile of this bashfulnesse, and surmoutryng his shuyng feare, whiche to hym seemed a staine, or let, in giuyng reste and appeasement, to his dismeasured Martyrdome, he determined (chaunce what chace might) leyng so passyng an oportunitie, to trie the watche, & understande if he were so well beloued of her, that he mighs obaine any mevicinable salve to recure his maladie . And beginnyng wⁱa voice enterrupted, with many sobbes and sorowfull sighes, hale trembyng for feare, like him whiche is put in place of iudgemente, to attende either his totall deliuery, or finall ende of his life and miserie: saied to her on this soore:

“ Madame, not of power to suppose (without hastenyng of my laste hence departure) the cruell Martyrdomes, and pitifull passions, whiche dooe ransacke and afflicc incessauntlie my poore harte, euer since first the pearcyng sparcles, of cryng fire, whiche come from out of those twoo cleare Cometes, wherewith your face is furnished and adornd, making waie through the windowes of myne vnadvised eyes, began to broule, and consume, by little & little, in suche sorte, that windyng me to wander, from reason (which onely maketh difference betwixte bruite beastes, and manne) and to forget all garde and respect due to your grace: I am enforced, to make my petition to you, if presumyng of your pacience, and of the oportunitie whiche presently offreth it self to let you understande that, whiche till now I haue kept secrete from you , it mate therefore please you, excusyng my presumption, and rashnesse, not to take it against harte, if I haue ouer boldlie aduaised my self to require you, that you would not with yokesome or lochsome disdaine, any longer

ger deny me that, whiche onely maie restore to me againe, , ,
the one halfe of my life: protestyng that leauing here in your , ,
custodie, the other mochte, you shall bee reputed the moste , ,
cruell, and uncourteuous Damozell that liueþ in so reiec- , ,
tyng my suice. But as he was purposed to procede further
herein, beginnyng to let fall Riuers of brackishe Teares,
from his weepynge eyes: shewinge of his complaint, by these
woordes.

Segnior Gradior (sated she) I am astouned, and dooe
muche marueile and muse, how you haue dared to thinke,
consideryng the amitie, and ample loue, whiche you affirme
to beare me, or at leaste wile (as I beleue) you make appa-
rance by your deceipfull, and Crocodilishe teares, to mini-
ster to me suchē matter: and not to other ende, as I thinke,
þē to betraie and deceiue me, or (after hauyng by your glo-
rious swete language, bereft and robbed me of that, whiche
all the worlde can not once restore) to addresse your scoffes
at my greate follie, in so sone relentyng to you, vpon the re-
queste, whiche you make to me. For well I knowe, that you
menne haue your affectiōns so light, that there needeth not
but one small blaste of winde, or any oþer obiect (although
lesse then that whereof you talke of) to make you chaunge
and transpoche them theþer and heþer, to serue their pre-
sent tournes and commoditie accordyngly, as you now
pretende of vs. Wherefore I hardly praise you, not to take
it straungely, if (for the conseruation of my Honour, which
I haue in greater p̄ice, not onely then of your passions and
distresses, but also of my proper life) you bee denied, and suf-
fer the repulse of the chynges, wherof you demaunded
me. For I loue better, that with myne Honour, I be deined
(as you determine) leuere and ceurll, then with myne infamie
(losyng that whiche so charely I shoulde keepe) to bes-
had in the reputation of an disordinate Damozell, and a
Maide of infamous life.

Whiche replie when she had so finished, the poore Paci-

ence,

The Hystorie

ente, hearyng so harde a sentence on hym pronounced, stode so troubled with yre and annoye, that if the maiden had not taken hym by the hande, and ledde hym into her chamber, to repose hym self, I beleue he would haue sodainly sounded before all the Companie. But while these thynges were a doyng, I must tell you that the king was no lesse idle in kis-
syng his Queene Bellizenne: For as he daunced with her, thei so mutually beheld, and cast such glauncing lookes the one to the other, with such fine & swete countenaunce, that the dimmest of sight, might well haue deemed, what desire they had of yrope, which so long had been reiourned. In such sorte, þ the Kyng beyng in þ first course of the daunce, more lusty, braue, & wel disposed, then he had been since his deliu-
raunce, or long agoe, retired secretly, without semblaunce of any thyng, into his chamber: whither full sone after, the Queene hauyng followed hym, I leaue you to ponder, if in such libertie, as thei had to contyn the one with the others appetites, beyng enflamed as thei were, the swete dalliance and amorous embracementes, were in any wise spared. For why, as telleth vs the Hystorie, thei so forgotte them selues, in their delights and plaies, that thei remained more then an whole hower, afore they retourned too ende the daunce in the Hall, deeming that of the chamber, better. Whiche was chief cause, that shortly after the Queene felte her heallie so bigge, that her garmenes were too litle for her. For she conceiued a daughter, whom she awhile after, bare and brought foorth, so perfecte of feature, that many braue Knights were enflamed with her loue, and she was named Polydame, of whom wee will make more ample discourse hereafter.

And on this wise eche one for his partee, applied hymself to pleasure, and to contente his mynde the besse he could: as when wee see a faire and Sunne shine daie, to bee ob-
scured, with a sodaine shadowe of a darke and duskie cloude which couering the Sunne, sheweth such sadde cheere, that
wee

we poore soules, are quite deprivued of þ pristine pleasure, and comfortable clearnes therof: their ioyes were interupted, by the arriuall of a certaine Page, attired in yeallowe & bleme Velvet. Who entryng the halle, made enquirie for the Prince Dorian of Spaine: to whō, when he had a sight of hym, and eche one was placed, to heare what he would, he thus spake: High Prince, the faire Ladie Amarille, daughter to the kyng Belligent of Fraunce, hath sente me to you, for that she understande that you were in this Courte, to present unto you on her behalfe, commendacions condigue to your highnesse: and also this letter (saied he, giuyng hym a paper whiche he helde in his hande) the whiche being read I praye you to dispatche me right sone, that I maie with diligence, returue accordançyng to her commaundement. Then, the Prince Dorian, not without chaunge of coullour and councenaunce, having taken and read the letter to hymself, founde it thus in tenour and effecte.

The Ladie Amarilles letter.

I woulde never haue thought (Lord Dorian) that so much infidelity and discource sie, as I knowe now to consist in you, had found place of residence, or dwelled in a knight so noble and valiaunte, as I haue still reputed, and esteemed, you, vntill this tyme, that seeing euidently twoo imperfections so greate, to bee possessed in you, that forgettynge the seruente amicie, whiche you to mee professed, and likewise the faische whiche you to mes promised, you haue beene bolde so impudently to use the same cowardes me, withoutuer giuyng you any occasion thereof: that I maruaile that the heauens dooe not ware redde, and ashamed at this so greate lightnesse, and inconstauncie, whiche proceadeth from the imperfection of your iudgemente. The which seeing too sodainly and violently, a certaine apprehension of loue (that you haue so ofte preached how beauty, wherof the soner to deceiue mee, you saide I was furnished, had so sore enflamed you, þ as you made semblat, you could rest neither

D.J. night

The Hystorie

night nor daie. But sone is the same floweren awaite, and the
tractes therof defaced out of your memory, by the sight pos-
sible of some obiecte, whiche hath been moze agreeable vnto
you. And this length of tyme by you protracted and neglec-
ted (without seyng me, after your departure, whē you went
towardes her, whiche is cause of your long absence) maketh
me to thinke and suppose, and understande that you feynyng
to seeke out (wherewith as with a sache you would couer
your self) Floridamant kyng of Greate Britaine, are presen-
tly in his court. Whereupon I haue with greate diligence,
and at the decease of the kyng my Father, addressed this
messenger to bryng vnto you this letter; thereby to burden
you with the fault, wherein not brightly you are culpable,
if incontinentely you come not towardes her, who resteth
attendaunt for your arriuall, that then she maye heare your
excuses and iustifications in this case.

*Tours more then her owne,
Amarille de Gaule.*

The readyng of this Letter, so pinched the Prince Dor-
an, that he could not abide to staine the reste of the daye in the
court of king Floridamant, but incontinently mountyng on
Horsebacke, and takyng leauue of the King and Quene, who
fain would, but could not staine hym, he iourneyed straight to
Gaulewarde, to her whom he so loued: accompanied onely
with the Page whiche had brought hym the Letter, and his
Squire: But in this pointe the Hystorie speakeþ not any
more of hym, but that in a while after, he espoused the Ladie
Amarille, by whom the firste yere of his Marriage, he had a
Daughter named *Angeliana*, the beste featured in singula-
ritie of beautie, that was of her tyme in the worlde, excepte
faire *Porphiria*, Daugther to the Emperour of Constan-
tiople: and shortly after was crowned kyng of Spaine, by
the decease of his father. Wherefore we lette hym reste and
raigne in his kyngdomme peaceably; and kyng Floridamant
also,

also, vntill suche tyme as occasion shall put vs in mynde, to speake more of them. For that, the dearyng of the Faerie staith too long in the Castle of the woodd of Cipres, whiche brygeth vs to produce hym forthe into the fieldes.

The Youth *Gerileon*, being come to the age of fiftene or sixtene yeres, the Fairie *Oziris* gaue hym an Harnis, enchaunted so and in suche sorte, that there was neither Iron nor Steele (how sharpe soeuer) which could in any wise pearce it : also she gaue hym the braue *Horsle Lycoccephal*, and a good Sworde, and hauyng tourned the Lyon whiche he had taken in the Forest into his firste forme, she gaue hym also vnto hym for his Squire. And thus apointed, she sent him towardes the Emperour of *Constantinople*, to receiuue the Order of knighthoode, and of the communication she had with hym before his departure.

The eight Chapter.



O w reffeth hereafter (noble lordinges, and illustrious knightes whiche willynglie take pleasure to reade the worthy deedes and memorabile enterpryses, of those whiche haue adoyned and aduaunced our wold) that I let you see a yong Warriour, the brauest and best skild in armes, the worthiest, puissantest and moste magnanimous of any other, wherof eufer mention was made. It is also for you, other faire and gracious ladies (who are prickid with the pleasant assaultes, whiche loue accustomably assigneth to them, whiche humbly liue languishing in the prisons of cruell desire, tormentynge their hertes with a cōtinuall amorous thought) that I shewe you of a yong Princesse accōplished in al per-

sections of beaulte, rather diuine then humane, the loueliest
accaynted, and dispiceoulye euylamed, by the ardent and
burning stroakes whiche proceeded from the persone of the
young Cyprian Tisfaire, aboue any other vnder the celestial
vaute since the creation of oure firste Fathers, if you will
haue pacience to reade and peruse this fine and delecta-
ble Historie. Wherefore ye must understande, that the gen-
till Youth Gerileon remained so long at Ozrys Wallace in
the wood of Cypres, with suche pleasure and contentement
as is alsoe laide: that he attainted the xv. yere of his age. At
what tyme hee was so sage, gentle, modest and courteous,
puisaunt and vertuous, that there was as then none in the
worlde, that in gifteis, whiche either Arte or Nature doeth
by the diuine prouidence of God, bestowe vpon man, could
in any poynt match hym, muche lesse surpassee hym. For hee
was so ta', wel made and proportioned in al his lymmes &
mem bers, that one could scarce finde any, which in largenesse
of bodie, or pregnancies of wit, could at that tyme be his e-
quall: and at that tyme (say I) for that, when he was come
to mans age, he far surpassid & excelled the stature of other
men. So which cause, the Fairie Ozrys, sleeping hym alrea-
dy so great & puisaunt, thought that it was not for his pro-
fite, but rather to degenerate from the Noblenesse of the
place, where hee tooke his originall. Wherefore desirynge
nought but his profite and aduauncement, seeyng that, if
he taried long in that state, and continued any moare in that
holupcuous and delicate trade of life, the prowesse and va-
lour which were in hym, should be so vnyportable, that they
should helpe no moare then a Treasure, whiche lyng hid in
the entrailles of the Earth, serueth not the vse of any, she
would not hinder the honour and fame which he afterward
atchiuied, to abide buried in the profound darkenes of a per-
petuall silence. Wherefore one daie when hee was alone in
his Chamber, readyng in a booke, in which kinde of exer-
cise hee tooke inestimable delight, he entered in: at whose
commynng

comming the Youth which was set, arose & saluted her with an humble reuerence, and she also vsed towardes him a reciprocall obeisance, contrary to her accustomed fashion. Then takynge hym by the hande, wherwith as yet he held his Hat, whiche she put on his head, she led hym to sit in a Chaire, covered with Damaske, whiche stood neere to her Bed side, wheron she leanyng, vsed to him these or such like wordes.

My sonne (for so she calde him still) sayng you are alreadie come to suche ripenes, and encreasement of age (for the whiche I praise the almighty God, whiche hath made, and doth governe all thynges) that as it semeth, you shall from henceforth be sufficient forcible, & strog to tolle in the field, with a cracklyng Corselet vpon your valiaunt shoulders: I am in opinion, that it shold be most good and profitable for you, and no lesse conueniente and fitte, that you were made knyght, by the handes of some good Prince: nor to let here slippe, or rather steape the graud prowesse & valiancie, that is in you, emong the chambers, gardens, and wooddes of this Pallaice, rather thā to remaine still to take your recreacions and pastymes, in a place full of delites, and manerly vanities, whiche art so alluring, & entice and flatter so, with the swætenes of their bitter baices, che hertes & myndes of young and yowrthful wighes, wherby thei entangle & blinde them in such sort, that thei make them forgette their duetic (although doth noble & gentle they hold them so wel hampered) þ with great difficulty, thei haue no power mast commonlie, to dispatche them of the same. Neith er yelde thei ought els in the ende, but a perpetuall dishonour, accompanied with a too late repentaunce, whiche after all this, hath to feede vpon, an infinite number of anguishes & sorowes. I saie not these thynges (my deare lyng) for any desire that I haue (contrary to your stomacke) to sende you hence: assuryng you, that I esteeme my selfe verie happie, in hauyng ministred unto you so good entertainment: But sozasmuch as I see, ye haue not had yet vntill this present,

H. iiiij. occasion.

The Hystorie

“ occasion of any miscontentmente. And this your absence
“ shall bee to me farre more yokesome, then all other dolours
“ that maie in any wise betide me: But because I foresee,
“ by my Artes and Sciences, that it shold bee greater losse
“ and damage, that the haughtie and illustrious feates of ar-
“ mes, whiche you are to byng to passe by your valiauncie,
“ shold remaine any longer in darcknesse, without enioyng
“ their future clearenesse, and apparente light. Furthermore
“ if you shold otherwise deale or dooe therein, you shold
“ degenerate greatly, frō the generositie of the place whence
“ you proceeded whiche by your vertue and valiauncie, you
“ ought to illustrate and adorne, yet more then euer it was.
“ If you will beleue me, and followe my counsaile. I praise
“ you in your presence, because I know your nature so good,
“ that for any laude that I can giue you, you would not (as
“ in dede it is nothyng decente) pusse vp your courage
“ and stuffe your self with pride: no more then you would en-
“ dure wrong, and vilanie dooen unto you by any other, you
“ not seekyng persone to resiste it. And knowe that too no o-
“ ther entent, I haue brought you vp, and nourished you with
“ so greate care and diligence, as I haue dooen, nor taken
“ you from the handes of your freindes in your Infancie, for
“ other occasion, then to eschew the misfourtunes, and misera-
“ ble destreties, whiche before hande I haue seen for you pre-
“ pared: to whiche you could in nowise haue resisted, without
“ my succour: To the greate damage, and totall ruine, bothe
“ of you, and also of your noble house, whiche thyng had
“ been lamentable. Wherefore I will and priaie you, for your
“ owne profit, that to morrowynge you departe, for to
“ goe to Constantynople, towardes the good Emperoure, to
“ whom you shall make supplication, for the order of knight-
“ hoode: and beleue that as I am certaine, he will not refuse
“ to doe your demaunde: afterwarde to make prooffe of this
“ greate valiauncie, whiche is in you. Assuryng you further-
“ more, that my succour shal shilde you still, and my aide
assit

of Gerileon. fol.32.

assit you euer, to eschewe the mortall and perilous encom-
braunce s, whiche I shall espie to be to you hurtfull. When
she had ended her speche in this order, the youtch who atten-
tively listened to her tale, yea ,and not without greate mar-
uaile of suche matters: aunswere her thus.

Madame, I am muche agreued in this, that you haue ta-
ken so muche paines, in vsyng so many wordes toward me,
to doe that, whereunto your bare commaundemente might
haue brought me to obey without resistaunce in any wise; &
wherin if you had not proued me, I was purposed to prai
you : considering the greate honours that diuorse haue ac-
quired , by haughtie and illustrious feates of valiauncie:
whereof I read in this booke , whiche I helde in my hande
at your entrie : but seyng that of your good grace, it hath
pleased you to open me the waie , and beate the pathe of a
boyage to me moste agreeable, seyng (I saie) that it plea-
sed you , I assure my self so well of the bouncie and amicite,
whiche you beare me, that you would not sende me in suche
affaires, without Varnesse, Hoyle, Pages , and other neces-
saries: Whiche when I haue , I will not faille to departe,
when it shall please you to commaunde me. And I maruaile
much of that whiche you haue saied, that (desirous of my
wellfare) ye haue rauished me out of the hedes of mine owne
frendes, to make me so escape the destenie perilous (as you
saye) for me prepared. For which seyng that it is so, I canot
reber you thakes as you deserue, besechyng you to erplane
vnto me thole speches, or els I shall never let my minde at
quiet: Seyng that I suppose myself none others childe but
yours. It is trus in deede, that of any Father that I had ye
never as yet colde me, and I knowe not what aane he was.

Hoyle , my frende (said the Faireie) deemed you me
so doultishe oy vndiscerte, that I would sende you towarde
so greate and noble a Lord, as the Emperour of Constan-
tinople is, to receiue the order of knighthosode, without fur-
niture both of Hoyle and Varnesse, according to your cal-
lyng.

The Hystorie.

lyng? I promise you to be as well thereof prouided, as any
Knight in the world shall be, & better: neither shall there be
any, that either in goodnessse of Hoysse or Varnesse shall sur-
pass you, to the ende to make you redoubted and feared a-
bove the rest, & to demonstratethe de grā whence and wher-
of you are. Wherefore I will tell you nothing vntill such e-
syme that through your vertues and valiauncie (whereof
your deedes shall yelde cleare testimonie) you haue merited
to bee calld and esteemed the Sonne of hym who hath be-
gotten you if not, as well you thinke you bee not my natu-
rall Sonne, but issyed from a stocke royall, wherof I praye
you speake no more: for at Gods appointment you shal wel
knowe it, the regarde whereof in all your deedes and enter-
prises, I praye you to haue above all thinges before your
eyes, and the Honour of Ladies and Damezelles in dñe re-
commendacion together, also with the loyaltie and fidelicie
of her, whiche in thys space shall rauishe you, of the beste
thing you haue in you. The youth without any replie made
to her, either further of his Race, or any other matter al-
though verie curios, noted and well marked, all that
whiche the Fairie had saied to hym: chiefly her laste wo-
des, purposyng with hym self, that none shoulde rauishe hym
of ought that he had: but he was more out of his accompte
then he thought. And hauyng been silence a certaine space,
he saied to her: Madame, when I praye you, shewe me if it so
please you, what furniture you will besyde on me, to the
ende that to morrowe Morning, I may fynde it all readie,
when it behoueth me to departe, and also what to quire you
will that I haue. Then the Fairie tooke the Lion, whiche
the youth had founde in the Foreste, whiche as then laye sle-
pyng vnder the Table like a Dogge, and recytyng certain
woordes of Enchauntemente, and annoynying hym with a
kinde of licour whiche she had, shewes caused hym to receiue
the forme of a youthfull manne of twencie yeres of age, or
therre about. And you must understand, that this was Ge-
ffrey

Se the Joylie, Squire to the Queene Bellizenne, who in
searchyng the yonge Gerileon at fyrste, when he loste hymself
in the Woodde of Cipres was by the Farterie, chaunged
from his fyrste forme, into the lkenesse of an hideous Lion,
and had without waryng olde, in anye wise, remained so
till that time: following vsually the yonge into euery place
like as the Dogges also, to the chace: Wherien he killed
multitude of wilde beastes. He also had the same apparell
whiche the other had, when he was first Metamorphosed, or
rather (if it be not lawful to empaire the Greke language)
to saie better, when as he chaunged his fyrste shape. At this
thyng bothe the Youtche, and also the poore Squire muche
maruailed. For the Squire remembred of nothing passe, no
more then as if he had been but even then borne; notwithstanding
standyng that hee was the same, and had like vense as hee
had before.

But the Fairie addressyng her speache to the Youtch, said
to hym: My freende, see here is now the Squire, whiche I
meant to giue to you for seruaunt, when you brought him to
me at the fyrst: & you Geliaſſe (said she to the Squire) see here
your Lord and Maister, whō I will that you serue, and ac-
company in al that, wherin he shall haue neede, and through
all places where he shall passe. Now (moreover she saied)
you want nothyng more but Horſe & Harnelle. And takyng
hym by the hande, she ledde hym ouer the steppes, whiche
stoode against a base Court, wherein when they were come
doun, the Youtch sawe the moſte gallant, brave, greate, and
beste made Horſe that euer man sawe, ſince the deaſt of Buce-
cephal kyng Alexanderis Horſe the Greate: of whose kinde
and bide the Fairie had ſo wrought, that ſhe had recou-
red this of aſtranger Theſſalon called Philonicus: who of
twoo faire Horſes whiche he had, ſolde the one to kyng A-
lexander for thirtene Talentes, that is Bucephall, and this
whereof wee ſpeake, to the Fairie Oziris for eightene,
whiche was called Lycocephall, for that that he had on hiſ

The Hystorie

forehedde, the forme of a Walses hedde, & was farre fairer
& greater then the other. For the Fairie had alwaies after
her buyng of him, kepte and garded him wel in her Fairie:
so that he was in no pointe, eicher waxen older, or empat-
red. And this was dooen, pur:posely for to make a presence
therof unto Geraslon, as well to hym appertained. Who se-
yng hym so faire, was therof ioyous, and fain he would that
it had as then been daie, that he might haue departed, and to
haue mounted on his backe. For he toke hym by the bridle,
out of the handes of the Nymphē Egle: whiche hauyng not
long before, brought hym out of the Faerie, by the com-
maundement of Oziris her Mistresse, helde hym as yet: so he
mountyng lightly vpon him, without aide of Stirrope (al-
though he were bigge and mightie, more then any other as
then to bee found) caused hym fower or five tymes to fetche
the carrie nimblie, and to gambolde lustelie, from the one
side of the Courte to the other, and made hym to gallop so
impetuouslie, that besides that, he wente more swifter then
any Swallowe, he made the peartre treble vnder his feete,
in suchē sorte, as never was afore so seen: wherein the YOUTH
ooke suche greate pleasure, to make hym courne, and passe
to the one side, and to the other, without any spurres at all,
that if the Faerie had not saied, that she would goe shewe
hym the Harnesse, whiche she would giue hym, I thinke
that he would not haue alighted in one whole hower. But
after she had tolde hym ther eof, the greate gladnesse that
he had to see it, made hym descende quickelie, and to followe
her into her Cabinette. From whence she brought stoe of
harnesse, the moste sumptuous, industriously engrauen, and
moste richely gilded, that was possiblē to see: without any o-
ther paintyng in the shielde, then a greate Crosse of golde,
whiche stretched from the one side to the other, in a fieldē of
Azure, whiche was Enchaunted in suche sorte, that no Yd
nor Steele (how harde so ever) could in any wise harme it:
but rather concrately, the harder & violenter that the stroke
whiche

which fell vpon it was, the more it hurt hym which gaue it, then hym whiche receiuued it. For in steede of enteryng or percing into it, the Sworde, Speare, Clubbe, or other such warlike instrumente, rebounded so high into the ayre, that often tymes it fell out of his handes, whiche was the owner thereof, and vsed it. This Harnesse became and fited hym so well, as though it had been of purpose appointed and made for him. And after this, she fetched out of her Cabinette, a Sworde large, faire, and of marueilous good edge: the Scaberde whereof, was of the skinne of a greate Serpente, whiche was slaine by Hercules, at what tyme he was verie young: The whiche was so finely trimmed, that although it was not garnished with diuerse Diamonds, and other precious stones: yet beyng sette againsse the Sunne, it would haue rendered a farre finer lighte, then golde it self. It is moste true, that the Sworde was not altogether fitte to the Scabarde: for the puissaunte Nabor kept as then, that, whiche was made for ic, whiche was the besse that was in the wold. For there was no Harnesse, of what goodnessse so euer (no although hardened by enchaistemente) that could resiste it, without beeyng cutte, and mangled in peeces. And it was called Duransarde, whiche the sated Nabor had conquered, and gotten from the terrible and hideous Giaunte Scarafarab, who was of the linage of Encellade, one of them whiche in tymes passe, would haue conquered Heauen: and were with Lightnyng destroyed by Jupiter (as it is saied in the firste Chapter of the thirde parte of Chonicles of Brandismell, compiled by Galarx) whereof the Faire Ozyris was greatly greeneed. For neuer could she possiblie recouer it, although she had alreadie gotten the Scaberde, wherein she gaue this, that I now speake of (whiche was matchable in bignesse, and almoste in makyng and goodnessse to Duransarde) to the Youth of the Faire (for so muste wec henceforth the name hym). Whiche caused her greatly to doubt, leasse any euill

I. i. should

The Hystorie

should chunce hym ther, because it cutte what soeuer ic
came nere, yea, Enchaunted Armes also (as I haue a-
soye saied) and whiche was worse, it was in the custodie of
one, whiche could better use it, then any knyght, as then in
wylde. She had also greate feare, leaste any sinistre acci-
dentes should happen unto him, by the meanes of any Mon-
Launce Enchaunted: against whiche, his Armoure, and o-
thers what soeuer, had no power to resiste: whiche was in
possession of an other moste braue, and valiaunte knyghte,
Sonne to kyng Belligent of Fraunce, called Diodamas,
whiche was giuen to his saied fader the kyng of Fraunce
by the noble kyng Brandisuell, to whom the Faerie Oziris
had made presente thereof, at what tyme hefought with the
mighty Giaunce Perciwall. Wherevpon shz aduertised the
Youth, that he shoulde endeouour to get bothe the Sworde
and Launce, as soone as he shoulde be made knyght. Who af-
ter that he had thanked the Faery, for all this faire & riche
furniture, whiche he gaue in custodie to his Squire, he re-
tired straight waires thence, by reason that the darkesome
night, beganne as then to chasse the brightsome Daye, from
out of the Celestiall Spannour, to the ende to take his rest,
that he might the sonet bee stirryng in the next morynge.

The youthe of the Faerie, departed with his faire and
gracious Faerie Oziris, to go toward the Emperour
of Constantinople, who gaue hym the order of
Knighthoode: and the Ladie Porpheris gotte hym
with his Sworde: whiche dooen, he would haue de-
parted, to haue sought straunge aduentures in Great
Britaine, but the Emperour auailed so with his wordes
that he staid hym, and made hym to promise to
tary fiftene daies in his seruice, whereby that chaun-
ced to hym, whiche you shall hereafter heare.

¶ The

The ix. Chapiter.



R V E it is (Noble Lordes and Ladieſ) that whatſoever greate beauines and deſire of ſleepe he haue , whiche ſe- lech in his head the Hammer of ſome greate Affaires of hiſ owne : So is it , that the reſt and tranquillitie of Men ſe are bereftē hym (yea although hiſ bedde be never ſo good) by the pleaunte detenſion of the ſame . For the Pouche of the Fairies , (hauyng withdra- wen hym ſelue into the Chambers , after hiſ Harnelle whiche Oziris had giuen hym) was brought in thither , he laide hym full ſoone in hiſ bed : where he beganne to ſleepe well for a whiſle , thinkyng to riſe beſore daie the next mor- myng , accordyng to hiſ earnell deſire . But ſcarce had he re- mained the ſpace of one hower , in the forgetfulnes of thys ſleepe , but that he awaked : and ſuppoſing that it had beene now broade daie , becauſe of the greate glimeryng of the Moone , which encread into hiſ Chamber by the windowes of the ſame (whiche he had of purpoule leſte open) he haſtelie caſted hiſ Squire , whiche was laide in another Chamber next to hiſ , to looke iſ Mournyng as yet in any wiſe apear- red : and cauſed hym to cloathe hymſelf to wachē (and ſo to aduertife him , when the daie began to drawe nere : expreſſe- ly enioynyng hym not to faile to aduertife hym thereof in- conſciencely , and herewpon ſent hym into the ſtable to dresſe and make ready hiſ Horſe , againſt hiſ ſpedy departure : all whiche , he diſ wililyngly . But whiſt he was aboue the ſame , the Pouche not able to ſleepe , diſ noughe but ponder and premeditate with hym ſelue ; how and in what order he ſhould demaunde hiſ knigheſhode of the Emperour of Conſtantinople , and what condigne thankes he ſhould yeld him , after the receipt of the ſame . But alſone as he had buildefd anye faire Bulwarke howe to acchiue the ſame , it was

The Hyfstorie

straight waies striken out of his minde, by the inuention of some other to hym seeming better. And in this cogitation abode he so long, that *Geliaste* was retourned from the stable: whom a newe he caused to set open the Windowes, to beholde if the glimmetryng light of *Cynthia* woulde as yet depart and geue place, in the Celestiall vauue of the Mournyng skie, Messenger of her Brother *Phæbus*. But he auersered hym, noe, (because of the greate desire that he had to sleepe) although *Aurora* began as then to waxe red: whiche brought to passe that the Youthe, and likewise his poore Squire fell bothe a sleepe, till such tyme that the Sunne, was well eleuate from the Indian Regions, and began to cast his Raies vpon their faces. Whereof *Geliaste* whiche in his Cloaches was couched vpon a little fielde bed in his Maisters Chamber, beyng first awaked, runne halfe a slepe as hee was, to awake the Youthe: who muche blamed hym, that he had not doen it afore thā: but he sware to hym by his honestie, that he had called hym twoo howers since: but because of his sound sleepe, he had suffered him to rest still: and better to cōfirme his saying, he said that he had well broken his fast, and drunken a good Cuppe of white Wine whiche was geuen hym. Wherefore the Youthe blamynge his too muche sluggishnesse, conuerted & tourned the anger on hym self. And taking in greate hastē his apparell, by the helpe of his Squire, was quickly cloached and also harnised. Than descendyng doun into the Halle, founde his b̄eakefaste all readie, where he had scarce either eaten or drunke, but he mounted vpon his b̄aue Horse *Lycoccephal*, and his Squire vpon an other: & after leaue & congee taken of the Noble Fairie *Ozrys*, & of the faire *Naiades*, who at his departure wept and mourned bitterly, he departed and wenc straight towardes the Porte, where he founde a Barke full fraughted & appointed ready to passe, wherein whē he was embarked, the Pilot launched forth and hoistte vp sailes, the winde being to thē sauourable. And so thei passed still on, one whole

Monech

Monech, without any daunger of shipwracke, or any other tempeste. At ende whereof they cooke Lande, in a Hauen before the Citie of Constantinople, late in an euening. And then when the Moruyng was come, the Youth of the Fairies beyng landed with his Squire Gelaiste, mounted on Horsebacke all armed except his Head and Armes, whiche were adornd with verie faire and riche Garmentes, wente on streight towarde the Pallace of the Emperour, whiche as then was at Deuine seruice: and therefore he remained on horsebacke still in the Courte, attenyng to see his comming from out of the Chapell, nor without geyng greate occasion of astonishmente, to many Knights and Gentlemen there walking, who cooke greate pleasure to beholde the singular grace and incomparable beautie of the Youthe: and by his onely looke and pleasaunt grauitie, thei judged that he was descended of some noble house, and full of manly courage (as in veritie there was nothyng otherwise to their wenings, nor contrarie to their esperauice) And whiles thei were thus busie, to beholde him as it were with admiration, hee gaue twoo or three prickes with his Spurres, to the good Horse *Lycoccephal*: who thereat vaultyng into the Ayre with a marueilous migh and nimblenesse, soone leue backe the beholders from his Maister: who were nowe more assounied at the goodnesse of the Horse, and at the grace of the Knight, whiche had pricked hym. And duryng the while that hee thus dallied with his Horse, the Lady *Porphiria*, daughter to the Emperour, the goodliest and fairest Gentlewoman, whiche euer was in the worlde, was as then in one of the Gallaries of the Pallace, ouer againste her Chamber: takyng singuler greate pleasure in contemplatyng of the Youthe of the Fairies. Of pleasure sochly (say I) for she not able to satisfie her selfe with the sight of his singuler beauty and grace, was so entencive to behold the pointes and prickes which afterwarde pearced her as you shall understande, that shes
leanyng.

The Hystorie

leanyng and restyng on her two armes in the gallerie, was so rauished with maruell and astonishment, that one would haue iudged some sounde sleepe, had sealed her settled eyes: when as out of her Chamber there issued out a moste faire and yong Damozell called Harderina, whiche was daughtier to the kyng of Hungarie, and Cosin to the Ladie: who with beauty and brautie of Graces, was as well endewed, as any other there to be founde in all Greece: onelie excepting the Ladie Porpheria, who in al pointes glittered more perfect, not onely before her, but also before all other which were vnder the cope of heauē. So I belene that nature had expressed in her, all the p̄ecious treasures of perfecte beautie, the most rare and singular, that she had in stōre from the beginningning of the woldē, so prodigally and with suchē cunnyng, that since the memorie of manne, vnder heauen was neuē seene suchē a peice of woozke: were it that any other Ladies or Damozeiles (though full famous in Feature) chaunced to approache neere vnto her, one would haue deēmed that Nature had dispoyled them of their dewe and requisite beautie, so to bestowe it wholy on her: and that ther seemed soule to shewe her more singular faire and perfecte. And here it forceth not to make comparissons with that beautie so famous, whiche caused the vter ruine and overthrowe of proude Ilion, with the destruction of the Troiane kyng, his childdren and subiectes, and muche lesse, that of the pomposus proude Romaine, whom the Senate caused to bee canonized: to couer her impudicitie. Yea we maie imagine, that if the goddess whom the Poetes faine to be mother to hym which causeth vs lone, had beene set by her, her beautie had had more light, then Diana hath of clearnesse, being adioygnante to her brother Phœbus. But what is it so me to amaze my selfe here in describyng of beautie, because of h̄r inestimable perfection: consideryng þ the most skilfull in eloquence, and those whiche haue the faculty to discouer with greater Emphasis (if so I maie saye) and abourdiance

of

of flowing Phases, should be well wearied in unwinding this as it is woxic, therefore now let vs reclame our dgressions. The maiden Haderuna seyng her faire cosin Porphyria so profoundlie pensiue, requested of her what she so busily behelde, who as it were newly awaked out of a deade ,
sleep, saied thus to her : I praze you deere Consine marke ,
well this Youtche whiche is belowe, if he bee not singularly ,
proportioned and of a passyng grace: and also skilfull, in so ,
gallantly guidyng his couragious Horse: verely Cousine, ,
(answered the Maiden) you saie well, know you not whence ,
he is, or what he would ? I promise you saied the Ladie, I ,
never sawe nor heard of hym till now,

These and suche other small communications had the two Maidens together, so long till at the laste the Emperour arived: who comynge from out of his Chappel, entered the greate Halle of his Pallace, hauyng in his Traine many braue Knights and Gentlemen, followyng hym. Whiche thinges the getele Youtch of the Faire beholdyng, descendyng incontinent from his Horse, whiche he deliu- red to keepe to his Squire, entered incontinently after the reste, and apperceiuyng the Emperour placed in his Impe- riall Seige, to deliberate vpon certeine matters, he knee- lyng humbly before hym, spake on this maner.

Moste pisiaunte and moste vertuous Emperoure, I ,
deeme vndoubtedly that you and semblably all this noble ,
Assistance, do greatly merueile, in that I haue so temerari- ,
ously, and vnreuerently dared to presente my selfe pooze ,
soule, before the highnesse of your Imperiall Maiestie; ,
doubtyng leaste this my audacitie and rashenesse, whiche ,
I haue vsed herein, will tourne towarde me, your displea- ,
sure, and bee odious to all the reste, if I had not suche confi- ,
dence, in the consideration, bountie, wisedome, clemencie, ,
lenitie, and other vertues, wherewithas a riche and pom- ,
pous Jewell is illustrated and pollished with Pearles and ,
precious Stones, so are you fraught and adorued: that not ,

The Hystorie

" onely you will willingly pardon mine indiscretion, but al-
" so I cruste in your great bountifulnesse and courtesie, that
" you will in no wise denie mee of that which I am purposed
" to request of you: that is to wit, that I maie receive the or-
" der of knighthoode by your handes, & for that I haue heard
" you aboue all others farre excolled) I haue beeene desirous
" therof euer frō my Cradle. The Emperour who whildest he
thus spake, had his eies & eares bent to regard & heare such
witty wordes & so good a grace: taking him by the Armes,
caused hym to stande vp before him, afoxe he had fully ended
his speache: knowyng euē by his pleasaunt grauitie, that
he could not choose but be come of a good house & princely
race, & gaue vnto hym this gracious aunswere. Faire sir &
friend of mine, although it were not true þ your youch could
not excuse you, if (as contrarie it is) you had vsed any rash-
nes or temericie in makynge to mee the request whiche late
you did: yet neverthelesse þ great beauty, and singular cou-
tenance whiche I note in you, and likewise the honest ma-
ners and behauour which you haue obserued in this point,
would constraine me, not only to condiscende (whiche I of-
fer you as now) to haue that whiche you demaunded, but also,
if there had appeared anie indiscretion in you, they woulde
haue incited mee to remit and pardon it totally. Assuryng
my selfe (although as yet you seeme too tender of age, to be
called to such a vocation) that if the bountie of your harts
bee corespondent to the beauty and apperlaunce of valure
whiche I deeme and conjecture to be in you, you are suffi-
cient and capable to discharge such a charge as well as any
other that now liueþ whatsoever: and for that cause there
resteth no more as nowe, but that you goe to prepare your
selfe, as the custome is, for to receiue the order of knighe-
hoode, when as you shal please and be therunto ready. Then
the Youch, chanking hym humbly as well he could: recyred
secretly thence, to goe make his prayers in the Chappell of
the Pallace as the custome was, where re remained till it
was

was the next daie mornyng , at what tyme hee came to present hymselfe to the Emperour , who dubbyng hym with the Necke stroake put on his right Spurre , and the Lady Porphyria who had scene hym come, descendyng doun, gire his Swerde about hym, by the commaundement of her fa-
ther . Whiche to doe, she was well pleased : and the Youthe who (whiles shee did her deuoyze in this bchalfe , muche maruelling at her miraculous beautie) was not ill conten-
ted that the chieffest , fairest & beautifullest Princesse vnder
Heauē, did vnto him so great a seruice. This done: the Em-
perour, who the moze he beheld him and saw him so garni-
shed in all pointes, the moze he was willyng to wit, who he
was, he required and asked of hym his birthe, and the estate
of his race and progenie. To whiche the youch made a most
ciuile aunswere, that he was of the Realme of greate Brit-
taine , but of none of his Parences, had he any knowledge: ”
and that for this cause it might please him to excuse hym,
if he were constrained herein to keepe silence: true it is (said
he): hat I know well, neither will I conceale it from you ”
(most noble Lorde) that I was nourished by a Fairie , who
sent me towardes you so furnished as ye see, & she is called
Ozyris . The Emperour who aforetime had heard talke of
the Fairy, deemed & doubted that she had kept hym for some
occasion (as most certaine it was) beyng proceeded frō the
progeny of the noble kynges of Great Britaine, as she had
aforetime done by the vertuous king Moridant, fatherto
Brandisnel, whitch was the first extoller of that magnificenc
Realme, and much marueiled therat. Neuerthelesse with-
out moze talk with hym, he commaunded some of the Assi-
stauntes , that they shoulde conduct hym into the Empresses
Chamber, to passe soorthe the tyme with her Damozelles,
and to discourse with them of many an honeste & amorous
deuise, as well (it seemed) he could. But the Youch willyng
to excuse him selfe herein, praied hym humbly that it would
please hym to geue him leauc to retourne into Greate Brit-
taine,

The Hystorie

vaine, there to seeke aduentures: so to assaye if the order of knyghtchoode, whiche he had obtained, were well or euill employed vpon hym. And also that he had greate desire to Juste and Combate with king *Floridamant*, which as then was had in pris for the beste and valiauncest knight in the world. The Emperour not well pleased in that he wold so soone departe from his Courte, saied to hym. Whyp (faire sir) will you so soone abandon vs and our Court, not in any wile feasted or cheared there as yet, accordaning to your cal-
lyng? I promise you, that if you will remaine with us but the space of fiftene daies, that besides the good and honeste entertainement whiche I hope thereby to bestowe on you, you shall here also finde knyghtes both braue and strong to make prooef of youre valour and prowesse, seyng your ad-
vente desire is so to doe. For I must one of these daies make a moste sumptuous Feaste, duryng the whiche, neicher Ju-
nis nor Tourneis shalbe lackyng: wherein you maie expe-
riment your valiance in this behalfe: therby to prepare your self the better against the worship knyghtes of greate Bri-
tain, whiche are the flowers of chivalrie in the worlde, and chiefly as you saie against kyng *Floridamant*, who hath not his match vnder heauē. And I suppose þ otherwile it would sooner turne to your dishonour then aduauncement, and that it should rather be imputed to your rashnesse then courage.
The Douch hearyng the Emperour speake with so greate modestie and charitesse, conceiued a certain singular loue of his prudencie, and suche a one as forced hym with a reuerent feare not to offend his hestes, neicher to doe any thyng disagreable vnto his mynde: & knewe that he had erred in wil-
lyng to departe, hauyng receiued farre aboue his deserthes, so muche honour of so greate a lord as he was, without do-
yng hym any deede of duetie or seruice. Wherefore to couer his fault, he said vnto him. Beinge it pleaseþ your Ma-
iestie to doe me so muche honour, as to retaine mee in your Courte, it shalbe then my ducie to go about to do you the best seruice.

service I canne : Assuryng you that no worldlie felicitie , ,
could happen as now mo:re greater, nor mo:re agreeable to , ,
my mind, then to haue the meane hereby to satissie your he: , ,
ses and desires. And ouer that, I shall thinke my self mosse , ,
happie, if I make gratifie your contentment, in dooynge you , ,
nught whiche mae bē to you pleasaunt and agreeable: that , ,
I maie ridde my self out the bandes of foule Ingratitude: , ,
wherein I were faste linked, if I did not putte in practise to , ,
attaine your commaundementees , and accomplitche your , ,
desires: Beyng you haue alreadie so bounde and made me , ,
yours, that it is passe my power, euer to shewe you so muche , ,
seruice , but that still I shall bee farre in your debte and , ,
daunger. Wherfore I am not of power (since so it pleasest , ,
you) to passe the limites of your will. The Emperour well , ,
contente and satissied , with the gracious aunswere of the , ,
Youtche of the Faieries, commaunded againe a Damozell , ,
whiche was there presente, that she should conduct hym to , ,
the Empresse Chamber: Whereto she promptly obeyed. , ,
And takynge hym by the hande , she ledde hym neare where , ,
she was , accompanied with so many faire Ladies and Da-
mozelles, thac at his entraunce within the Chamber, he se-
med to se so many Angelles in Paradise, as there were La-
dies waitynge abouete the Empresse: who talkynge with cer-
taine Princes there with her , she made them stande some-
what a side , the better to see the Youtche of the Faieries:
who enteryng into the Chamber, saluced her humblie: to
whom when she had vsed like curtesie, seeyng hym so faire
and courteous, she could not sticke (being muche astonished
to see a yong manne so comely) to saie to them whiche were
about her: I beleue that if this Youth haue the bountie and
promise of the minde, equal and matchable to the makynge,
and proportion of his body, he will be the best and worshiest
knight vnder the Skies. And whiles she saied these wo-
des, the Youtche beyng approched mo:re nere , she beganne
to aske hym of his birthe, and why he was come into a cou-

The Hystorie

crie so farre, to receive the Order of knighthoode, seyng
ther was in Great Britaigne, King Floridamant, who was
reputed the moste royall Kyng, and balaunt Knight of the
whole Earth, and suche other odde talke: whereto he aun-
swered so aptly that she remained well satisfied. But after
that she had ended her speache, her Damozelles, which still
attended when she would leaue him, for them, beganne here
and thereto enforce theim selues, to please hym the best
thei could, bothe in woordes and other thinges; to eche of
whom hee answered well and honestly, accordaning to their
demaunde: assuring you that none gaue hym a quippe in a-
ny cause, but that he required her againe quicklie, with the
lyke coyne. But hee whiche well knewe howe to shifte be-
tweene two walles, was scarce contented to be conuersans
with them, for that there he could not see one sparke of the
beautie of her, which girded his Woerde about hym, wher-
with hee was somewhat attached: for that she whiche had
caste her eyes on hym so attenciuely, beganne alreadie to
haue her senses troubled, though the loue of hym: where-
upon she was retired secretly into her chamber much pen-
sive: at whose issyng soorthe, that chaunced vnto hym,
whiche you shall heare,

The Ladie *Porphyria* beyng come out of her Closet, to
enter into her mother the Empresse Chamber, seyng
the Youth so faire and comely, was so attainted with
his Loue, that she fell in a sound before the Empresse
her mother, and the rest of her companie: who there-
at, beyng muche astonished and abashed, conueyed
her as well as thei could, into her Chamber againe:
where she hauyng recovered her late loste sensies, the
Princesse *Harderine* her cousin, whiche would haue
knowen the cause of her desease, went also out of the
chainber, for that the Lady made deniall to tell it vnto
her, & listenyng at the doore, heard her complain of the
of

of the Youthe of the Faerie. Wherefore goyng into the Hall, and findyng the Damozell *Marcelle*, she recounted to her the Ladies woordes, who goyng thither to visite her, had with her suchē communication as I will recoumpte vnto you.

The x. Chapter.



At all desteny, daughter to God almighty, hauyng once by the comauement of her Father, purchased some misfor-
tune, to any mortall wight: what p[ro]u-
idence, pollicy or humaine devise so euer
a man applieth, to euite and shunne thys
eternall decretē of thinges, yet is it so
still, that shee rageth, and hath swaye ouer all oure doo-
ges. I say this, soz that, what meanes soeuer the Lady *Por-
phyrie* could inuent, to eschue and flee the loue of the Youthe
of the Faerie, whiche as now began to weaken the stron-
gest, yea the soundest of her inner partes: yet notwithstanding
was it vnypossible (Destenie so apointeyng) to exempce
her self, from any parte of those amourous cogitations,
whiche through their violence, tooke still encrease within
her clogged harte, with this want of senses, which you shall
heare. Wherin it is to be noted, þ whiles the wise & gentle
Youthe of the Faeries, conuersaunt emongest the Damo-
zelles of the Empresse, did hold them in, with many a merie
teste, and honest devise, though therein hee tooke no great
pleasure, because he sawe not her, whose Idea of perfection
he had somewhat imprinted in his harte, to witte, the faire
Ladie *Porphyrie*, who as then was of the age of fowertene
or fiftene yeres (an age without doubt, capable enough of
the contagious scorbinges of cruell Loue) beholde where
she came halfe sadde and sorrowfull into the Hall; of pur-
pose to see hym. Neuerthelesse, feignyng that she came not

The Hyfstorie

for other occasion then to solace , and spoyte her self accordyngly, as sometyme she had accustomed with the Maides of the Empresse her Mother. Amongst whom, in euill tyme apperceiyng the fostered sonne of the noble Faerie Oziris , and hauyng espied her comynge , did his endeouour to salute her, and she reciprocally also rendered the like: sayng hym (I saie,) so faire and beautifull, that it was vnpossible to saie ought moxe, she was so ententive to entertaine hym in salutations, with semblaunce of likyng, as no leste he did to her, that the sweete ventione of Loue, whiche on this wise is supped, beganne to inebriate the hertes of the one and of the other: so muche that the Vermillion red, whiche retired from the middle of their visages, gaue conjecture to some of the Damozelles (who were moxe skilled and conuersant in the case then oþers) of that, whiche was happened . For there wanted not much but that þ YOUTH (transported with a beautie unmatchable, and never hauing felt suche impressions of loue in his phantasie afore) had almost fallen doun in a slumber: but takyng harte to him, he dissembled his dolour the best he could. But the ladie, were it þ she was charged with moxe matter of this Marrowe then he, or that she was leste couragious and able, to beare out these brantes, bestowed by the little God , on thē, whom he inwappeth in his nettes, was through phansie forced to fall in a soude soudainly in the place where she stooode. Wherof we neede not doubt if the Empresse & her Damozels, who sawe her fall, were afraide, and maruiled: for thei thinkyng that she was deade, with an infinite number of cries , and lamentations moste pitifull, ran speedely on this side and on that, to lifte and raise her vp, stil tremblyng & astonished for feare, which thei had, leaste she were deade . But after thei had felte her poules, findyng her yet a litle, thei appeised and moderatyd the vehemencie of their dolours, to recomfoye the Empresse: who hauyng her harte cloied with distresse, could not speake a woord: saying one to an other, that some defaule

of harte had surprised her: oþ els that not haþyng eaten any
meate that Mornynge, her senses and stomacke failed her:
some other saied that possiblie it was her gouine becynge to
straight for her. And thus these woenen Philosophatynge
þpon her sodaine sounynges, thei tooke and caried her cha-
relie into her chamber: where beyng laied þpon her bedde,
thei caste certayne droppes of colde water in her visage, and
then she beganne to reuerte, and come againe to her self: and
openyng her eyes, she was aliogether amazed to se so many
people busied about her, and chiesse to heare her cousin
Harderine weepyng so bitterly, that kislyng her she watterd
her cheekeþ with teares) to call her with a loude voyce.
Wherfore with a feble and lowe voyce, the Ladie badde
her, that she shold shutte all the windowes of the chamber,
and then cause all the rest of the Damozelles to depart, be-
cause she had great desire to slepe. Then the ladie *Harderine*
asked her saiyng: Will you not that I tary here with you
(Madame) that if in case any necessarie perturbe you, I
maie preuent it to my power? That is as it shall please you,
cousin, saied she: and incontinently all the Damozelles wen-
out, and made reporte to the Empresse, how her daughter
was somewhat amended then afore, and that this sou-
nyng proceeded not of any other cause, then of the quaist-
nesse of her stomacke, whiche had surprised her, in that she
had not rested the Nighe before, because of the Alarmes
whiche the Giaunce *Ferclastis*, and his twoo breþhen, made
nightly to the Cittie, wherewith the Empresse was some-
what satisfied, and ceassed her careþ.

The Ladie *Harderine*, who remainyng sole in the Lady
Porphyria her Chamber, willyng to knowe the cause of her
dolour, beganne to feeche her in with these wordes: I am
greatly astonisched and abashed (Madame) whence oþ how
you shold haue this greacie default of harte, that so sodain-
lie you shold fall voun soundyng before the Empresse:
doþ you feele your self euill? Is there any interiour mala-

The Hyfstorie

14.107
" die, or secrete saylome within your corps, whiche through
" his violence, hath caused this auoydance of sensess: I prate
" you not to conceale it; but rather to communicate it frellie
" to me, so that it maie be amedde. If by sysecretly shoude
" and shadowe it, I assure you, your self shall bee the speedie
" procurer, and seker of your owne deacie, whiche if it shoule
" once chaunce, I shoule not long after liue. Wherefore I
" prate you once again my sweete Mistres (saied she in kissing
" her) vouchsafe to make me knowe your maladie. Ah cosine
" (saied she to her) thinke you me so sotcishe, vndiscrete, and
" such an enemie to my self, that if I felte any euill to annoy
" me, whereto the Phisicions might apply the order of amen-
" dement, that I would conceale it from you, hauyng hereto-
" fore manifested to you, all the motions of my mynde; and
" secret thoughtes that I euer suffred: The Ladie Harderine
hearyng her so speake, had at the firste greate feare, least she
had felte some corporall maladie within her self, daunge-
rous and incurable: but hauyng pondered somewhat apart
vpon her speaches, she doubted sodainly that perhaunce she
was pricked with the perillous darce of Loue, whiche one-
ly is incurable, either with Hearbes or Siropes: Where-
fore to lighten her doubt, she thought good to trie the
watche further, saying on this sorte:

" And how then Madame doeth the cause of your doloure,
" and sounyng procede from any maladie, whiche the Phisi-
" cions by no meanes can cure? I can not rightly bee me, what
" desease paineth you, sayng there is no sicknesse so soze, that
" Sir Sagibell your father the Emperours Phisicion, who is
" the moste skilfull and tried man in his Arce, can not by his
" medicines give some recure and helpe unto. Tosin (replied
" the faire Ladie) you knowe well, that I never conceale
" from you any of my secretes, though verie priuate, were
" they never of so greate importance. And therefore I will
" not now hide from you my langour, seeing you are so dest-
" rous to knowe it; and that whiche I auiss were, proceeded
not

not from ought els, but of the greate desire I haue to slepe. ,
Wherfore since ye knowe it presently, I prae you no more ,
to disquiet me, but do so muche as depart the chamber, that ,
then I maie slepe the moe at my ease: And an hower hence ,
you maie returne to awake me, at what tyme you shall per- ,
ceiue my maladie muche amended. I se wel, saied Harderine ,
(doubtyng moe now then afor, of an eele vnder the stone) ,
that the case standeth not so, thvt you maye hide it well e- ,
nough. For the fire was never yet in a place so secrete, nei- ,
ther hid in a denne so dēpe, but that some smoke therof ap- ,
peared and was seen: at whiche woordes she went forthe of
the chāber, hutting the doore after her, and feining to goe
along the Gallerie, correspondente to the issue of the same,
she went not farre, but retourned softly againe, to barkan
at the doore, if in any pointe shc could heare the distressed
Ladie complain: who as sone as she sawe her departed, had
begonne her plotte to this purpose, drawing moste sorrow-
full sighes, from the bottome of her harte. Woe is me, what
passiō of mynde might this be that I fele? O miserable and
desolate that I am, what straunge dolour, what vnknowen
alteracion dde I feele, to martire and crucifie my hart, with
suche outrage, that I attende noughe els but the arriuall
of that cruell and inhumain deach, to ende my doleful daies
and to deliuere me from the passions, and anguishes where-
with like frysing fire, I now still seele my bowels to burne? ,
Beholde O thou Serpentine Douch, replete with payson: ,
how lucklesse and unfortunat soz me the daie was, wherin ,
thou diddest here arriue, and come in presence: for since first ,
I sawe thee, I knowe not how nor whither myne affectiō is ,
transported. I know not where my cēder hart is become, I ,
know not what rage, & what furie hath surprised and holdē ,
my sensēs & raison so captivated, þ I cānot (alas) I cannot ,
see nor knowe, how nor by what meanes I may deliuere my ,
self from this mischaunce and miserie, without greate losse ,
and blemish of mine honour. Ah cruell: ah felonious & pici- ,

The Hyſtorie

letter Is it poffible that (as well it appereach) I art come to
this Coal for no other occation,then to caufe me to pine in
this dolour & diſtreſſe, by thy beauty and behaviour, whiche
I well beliere thou haſte bought or borrowed by Tharmes
and Enchauntances of ſome ſkilfull Fairie (yea rather
Worterelle) whiche hath ſente thee expreſſely hither, ſo to
capituare and depriue me of my priuinate and auncient li-
berties. But alas ſor & ſenceleſſe foole that I am : ſufficech
it not me enough to be vexed & tormented, but that there-
upon I muſt alſo curse hym, who neuer in his life either
wrought or thought my diſpleaſure: and who (perhaunce)
if I required hym thereto, would not ſeme to denie me his
ſervice. For if he knewe that for his loue I languished as I
doe, I am ascertained by the affabilitie, bountie & courtesie,
wherewith (as I ſurely coniecture) he is complete and fur-
nished, that he would be muſche vexed and agreedew at mine
inforuant encombraunce: not hauyng as I ſuppoſe, gi-
uen any accepte either in thought, woord or deede, to pro-
cure or worke neuer ſo little woe or diſpleaſure, wherof I
may fullie accouſe, hym. I can not therefore imagine from
whence it is, that this traunce now troublynge my loule,
proceedeth, iſ it be not from the fountaine of freſtyng loue.
The which beyng naturall, as oþre I haue heard ſay, & now
in ſome parte haue proued, it is great injurie, that I ſhould
blame hym ſo: yea rather I ought to reprehend mine owne
nature, or the cruell veleny, guider of my yeres, which (yea
and poſſible for my prefermente) hath ordeined that hee
ſhall one day be the Lorde and true Maister of my hart and
bodie likewiſe. For the which cauſe I will enforce my ſelſe
yet will, cloaking the coulour of myns ill chaunce the beſte
that I can, to bring hym, iſ he yet be not ſo muſche to obay
me as I am at his commaundemente: in that hee can not
chuse, but that I may loue hym, hauyng his perfections im-
printed in me with ſo ſure a Deale, that the proceſſe of time
is in no wiſe able to deface it: Deyng that the loue whiche

I entende to vse , is a thing holy and constituted of God on
 hie. And thereson let come what will: let the Emperour my
 Father fret and fume hereat at his pleasure: let all thinges
 herein tourne vpsidedoune , if it may chaunce that in anie
 wise I mate understande , that hee is attainted and caught
 wch the same sicknesse that I am . But seeyng that I my
 selfe can not bryng this to passe , and because also that my
 Maladie whiche proeedeth from loue,hath this particula-
 ritie in icelde, that it may receiue no redresse , if it bee con-
 ceiled and kept secret,I am in mynde to discouer and make
 it knownen to my Cousin Harderine, and to the Ladie Marcel-
 la, who nor bewrayng mee, shall geue mee counsaile in this
 myne harde affaire. When she had ended her speach to this
 purpose , the Maiden Harderine whiche was at the scoute
 watch,hearyng this resolution,went awaie thence,making
 the smallest noise she could, & so passed through the Gallerie
 into the Empresses chamber,where hauyng found the lady
 Marcella (who was a woman right wise and honest, widow
 to the late Duke of Chalcyde : to whom,because of her mo-
 destie and demeaner,was giuen the custodie of the young la-
 die Porpharia , she recompted to her all the complaints,
 whiche of her Cousin she had lately heard. Wherat she not
 greatly maruelled: as one whiche doubted, by the counte-
 naunces & behauors of louers,in d oyng the duetie of cour-
 tesie,of that whiche was veritable & true in deede. Where-
 fore she and Harderine hande in hande went into the young
 ladies chamber,whō ther found sadly walking vp & dounē.
 Who discryng them,died her fate with a more ioyfull hewe
 and shewe,then her harte had of contentment:and adressing
 her speache to Harderine she said: My sweete cousin is it not
 true,that whē I told you I had syre, I should be better? A-
 ha,said the other,whiche knewe the greatest secretes of her
 harte,you haue not as yet the meane to bee so whole ,as to
 vs ye make semblance:for the deseale,whereof I heard you
 not long since cōplaine,receiueth not so soone recure,with-

The Hystorie

out aplyng of an other remedy, the you haue yet had. What Cousine, (saied the yong Ladie) of what Maladie haue you heard me make my moane, whereof I am not yet ridde and deliuered of? Of the feuer whiche proceedeth of the heare of Cupids burnyng infections, saied she. Porphirie, seeing that her Pot was discouered, and her Secretes knowne, caused them both to sit by her and saide. Although it shold bee so that you had in no wise knowne my misfortune: yet in no wise could it so continue, that you beyng the persons onely in whom I haue confidence, more then in any others whatsoeuer, I wold haue hidde from you any of my sinister fortunes, and distresses: knowyng you euer to haue continued loyall & faithfull towarde me: and so that I haue no cause to complaine my self, sith I haue never concealed and coured from your so laudable taciturnitie, all that (although of greate importancie) whiche I haue stil made you partakeris of: whiche maketh me hope, that not to purchase my anoyntance or displeasure, but rather to succour me in this my so vrgente affaire, you would not beginne at this tyme, consideryng the consequence of the deede, from whence the question cometh: and what daunger I haue vsed at the first, to discouer it vnto you. I praye you (deere Cousin) be not therewith displeased. For though I was loath to make you priuie of it, yet it is not good so to doe thinges rashely, without pre-meditatyng what issue it may haue and consuleyng therof, which was the chief canse, þ assured of your loyaltie, which haue yet failed me, I was of purpose to imparce my secretes to you bothe. I knowe it well (saied Harderine) for if I had not heard your resolution, whiche did manifest vnto vs the cause of your Maladie (whereof wee neede not now to trouble you with talke, seeing we are sufficiently informed of the matter it self) I wold haue had regarde not to haue so manifested it to Maistres Marcell, and to bryng her hither, for feare of doyng a thyng displeasaunte vnto you. But intenyng that, wheroft you were taikng, and the confidēce
whiche

whiche you haue in her, beyng to me not vnknowen, I pray ,
you take no displeasure, if I be emboldened rashely to bring ,
her in presence: For I well knowe that herein she can gine ,
you better counsell then I, as one that is more trained and ,
experimeted, not onely in maccers of loue, but also in many ,
other thinges. Then the lady *Marcella* cutting of her wox ,
des, begā to speake on this wise. Madame *Harderine*, seyng ,
here rilech no question, neither is it needfull to spende the
tyme in praisynge the one the other: touching that that you ,
saiet, how I am more sage then you, therein I reporte me to ,
the saiynges of those which know vs both, who wel inough ,
knowe the contrarie: neuerthelesse takyng these your prais-
ses in good parte, soz that he or she whiche receiueth not a
praise or laude vpon any occasiō bestowed vpon thē, semeth
to make hymself culpable of outrage and dishonour, whiche
any obiecte maye offer vnto hym. But let vs chaunge our
stile: as for that Madame saied she (addressyng her speach
to the Lady *Porphirie*) that you request mee to keepe youre
newe strong loues in secrecie, I promise you, yea and pro-
test before God, that I will soner suffer a thousand deaches
then to discouer anie parte thereof contrarie to your com-
maundemente: Neither shall it bee knownen or come out on
my side, saier, *Harderine*. Then *Marcella* proceeded and said:
I maruell where you haue lost your Senses, or where that
opinion is become, whiche you had not longe since, when
here beyng alone in this chamber, you saied to me, that nei-
ther the flames nor the stroakes of Loue, shold euer haue
any puissance vpon you, and that those whiche vnderthat
yoke of seruite, endured so many Martyrdomes and pas-
sions, as *Anidre* tolde you, that she suffered for the loue of
Pharis for your cosin, the flower of valiance in all Grece, were
but fooles, incoustant and voyde of understandyng: saiyng
furthermore, that as for you, none shold euer haue parte in
your fauour and grace, muche lesse in your Loue: who was
not reputed for the puissaunce and beautifullest Prince in ,

The Hystorie

“ the worlde. And nowe through the onely bēve of a newe
“ Knighe estranger, who never burste as yet Speare ne
“ launce, I see you trasported frō that stedfastnes, whereof ye
“ so vaunted, and so dispossesed with your amorous passion,
“ that hauyng lost all that which best seemed in you, you were
“ forced to fall dounne sounded and halfe dead, and scarce yet
“ know where ye are. Alas it so behoueth not any to gouerne
“ them self: it is not fit to vse suche fashions and deedes: for if
“ you proceede anie further, I assure you, it can not chaunce
“ but to your greate dishonour, beyng in fine discouered. But
“ I will tell you, secyng in this, it pleasech you to vse my
“ counsaile, I thinke this beste in my conceipte, þ for these fif-
“ tene or sixtene daies you seeme to keepe your Chamber, fai-
“ nyng to be somewhat sick: as well not to geue any comie-
“ ture of the cause of your Maladie: as also thereby loosing
“ the sight of the Youth, whiche is the onely obiecte (as I un-
“ derstande) of your Passions, who at that tyme prefixed
“ muste departe, abandoning this motion of Loue whiche is
“ but imaginatiue. Whiche the more violente and sodaine it
“ hath been, so muche the sooner shall it vanishe awaie, and
“ the webbes thereof bee worne out of your memozie. Like
“ as their custome is, who lightlie hauyng apprehended the
“ obiecte of Loue, and attirynge them selues therewith: Doe
“ sodainly and vnconstauncie forgette the same by disconti-
“ nuance of contemplatyng their chosen marke: and this is
“ the onely remedye whiche you muste vse for your amendement.
“ Assuryng you, that if you doe otherwise, (as looke
“ how neere that one approcheth the Fire, the more forcible
“ feeleth he the flames, and scorchyng heate: likewise imita-
“ cyng the Butterflie, who striues to burne her selfe in the
“ Candle) if you call hym into your presence, affectionatyng
“ your self more to behold him: þe your malady, no lesse then
“ your defamatio will take suche roote and encrease, that you
“ not able to rāde your handes thereof, too late will come re-
“ pentance. What (said the Princesse) ladie, is this same the
“ beste

beste counsall and succour, whiche you seeme good to giue
me: Deeme you, that I haue so lightly apprecheded and
emprincted, the loue of the yonge Gentleman in my harte,
that I can disburden my selfe therof at pleasure, as you
saiē: Seing that the same shoulde proceede from me, rather
of a greate imperfection of iudgemente, dependyng bypon
an opinion without effecte, then of the loyaltie and stedfast-
nesse, which I am alreadie resolued to beare him, all ydaies
of my life: whiche surely shall shortly take ende, if I knowe
not quickly, that his amitie is reciprocall, and correspon-
dente to myne. No, no, if euer ye did me pleasure, or if euer
you had a good mind to gratifie me, it behoueth you my La-
dies & frendes, that at this present you doe mee so much ser-
uice, as to searche where he is, and to learne by some honest
and subtile maner, if he may finde in his harte to loue mee,
or if he haue his mind fixes els where. Beseeching you here-
in, to proceede in such maner, that mine honour may there-
by be as little as ye can, blotted, neither mine entent disco-
uereb which thing if ye bouchsafe to do, I am so acerteined
in your foresight and wisedome, that you shall therby gaine
to your selues greate honour: or at leastwise if this seeme of
to hard disgression for you, I praye you gaine mee some other
better counsell, not like to that afore recited: assuring you,
that if you forbid me not the disconciuauice of loue, I wil
enforce my selfe by all meanes possible to vse youre advise.
Leige Princesse (said Marcella) to tell or certifie the Youth
that you are amourous of him, or to giue him other notyce
therof, then by the eyes (which are the true and accustomed
Messenger's of the most priuie intencions of the harte) see-
ing you are so stikkely bent neuer to loue any other: it see-
meth me, that it canoē be done, woye inferring great dish-
nour to your personage. For in speaking by my Mouth, or
any others, you should seeme to vse the Office of askynge
that, which were inough rather to make you loose for euer
your newe chosen frende, then to make hym youres. For

M.J. there-

The Hystorie

thervpon he wold hould hym selfe so proude and pre sump-
teous, if in this case he caught smachte of the least chyng in
the worlde, that in lieu of louting you, he wold rather dis-
daine you. Neuerthelesse, I wil tell you what I haue seene,
and more then that, haue markeid: that when so euer he hath
chaunced to see you, he hath no lesse chaunged countenaunce
then you, which maketh mee dreine, that wheresouer he be,
he is not altogether exempte, from the feelyng of affection
like to yours: which chyng we may thorooughly know to the
truche, duryng these fiftene daies which he hath to remayne
here. In suche prestide space, I beleue, that if there bee anie
goodnesse in hym, wee shall knowe it. For hee will be at the
Justes which the Emporour wil cause to be proclaimed to
morrowe, as I understande: wherat all the best knightes of
Constantinople, wil bee as Assistauntes: and Don Gillant
de Barage of Greate Britaine, who is merueilous val-
aunt, will bee there also: against whom, we shall see howe
he can beare hym selfe, and what he will doe moxeouer, if he
haue any affection towardes you. For if it bee so, I assure
my selfe, that if hee maie vanquishe any, he will sende hym
to bee your Prisoner, or will vse some suche gentlenesse or
courtesie in your behalfe: for verelie it seemeth mee, that
if hee bee of so hie linage, or if he bee so valiaunte as in ap-
pearaunce he seemeth, certes he is worthy to bee beloued
of some greate and beautifull Princesse. Wherfore, La-
die, I pрайe you, ceasse your Teares, that you giue not ouer
any suspicion of your distresse: be temperate till to morow,
and then I promise to giue you counsell, vpon further deli-
beration, more wholsome and agreeable, then presently I
can. For now we must goe towardes the Empresse, to deli-
uer her of the dolour wherein shee yet resteth, supposing
that by this tyme, you are neere hande dead. And keepe the
best countenaunce you can, therby to cloake your care: & so
God will aide you soone (you shall see) in some sorte. Then
taking her by the left hand, and Hardcrize by the right, who
sayed

saled unto her: good God, Colin, I would not for any thing
in the world, be so amourous as you: and for this cause will
I keepe my selfe quiet from blaspheming of loue euer here-
after: seeyng that his puissaunce punisched so pitifullly, those
whom he once taketh in hande. And then they arived in the
Emperours Chamber, who was exceeding glad when she
understoode that her daughter seemed as nowe to haue no
further malady: where wce nowe wil leauue them, and tell
what chaunced to the Youtch of the Fairies.

Of the perplexitic of the Youthe of the Fairies, after the
fight of *Porphyria* her surpassing beauty, and how the
Emperour sente to seeke hym by his Squire *Geliuste*,
who came and founde hym beeyn all sad and pen-
sive: and lettyng hym vnderstande howe the Empe-
rour had asked for him, he went into the Hall, where
the Table was couered for dinner: where he being set
with him in the cōpaignie of his Barons & Knights,
much maruiled to see them dyne in their Harnesses:
whereof he makyng enquirie, the Emperour recom-
pited to hym the aduenture of three matueilous Gy-
antes *Ferclaste*, *Androfort* and *Ergoferant*, whiche
caused that shortly after hee departed secretlye from
the Courte, to goe fight with theym, and of the ad-
uentures whiche he found by the waie.

The xi. Chapter.



ND on the other side was the Youtch of
the Fairies, who hauyng seen the in-
comparable beautie of *Porphyria*, felte
himself when as he firste sette his eycs
wypon her, wounded and smitten by the
same shaft, & sensiblable prickes of loue.
True it is, that his passion was not at

The Hystorie

the first shew so violence, that (like her) he shold presently
sounde, in that, he was more manly and strong, to suffer al-
taulces. (or perchaunce to speake more plainly) he was not
burthened so in che, as she then presently; but longe it was
not, ere their passions were equall: For seeing her to fall in-
to a traunce, amongst her Maides and Damezelles, who
bare her up, and brought her into her Chamber, he allasto-
nished, passed by a Portcall, from out of the Hall into a Gal-
lerie, whiche boldred on a faire and pleasaunte Garder, at
the ende whereof, hee founde certaine steppes to descende
doun, and so walked long time, soley de scantyng vpon the
newe cogitations of his Loue. And herein he imagined so
well, and called so curiously to remembraunce that Ange-
licall shape, which he had seen, and which helde hym so rau-
shed, and wherein he had entred so far, that becomingly ar-
dently amaurous, he fel for certainty, the finall losse of his
late power and libertie. But wot ye how? Ffsooth this
impression imaginatiue tooke suche encrease in hym, that
he knew not where he was; for his harte yet tender, yonge
and easie to receiue suche like violence impressions, did
nought but imagine how to finde meanes, to let her under-
stante his griefe, and to wyne her fauour. Well daryng
(although he knewe not of whence hee was) to aspire
so farre, as too promyse hym selfe the Alliaunce of a
greate a Lorde, as the Emperour of Constantinople: as
well as if he had been assured of the house, whereout he was
descended: so magnanimous an harte had hee, and in suche
sorte was his haughte mynde settled. But moxeouer, con-
sidering the impossibilitie of the facte, he chaunged soone his
opinion, and became astonied, as once was the lame Smith
of Jupiter, at what time throught Choller, he was cast doun
headlong from heauen. For he tormentted hym selfe throught
the vehemencie that he felte, broiling in the fire, which con-
tinually encreasing in flames, made him to suffer more tor-
ment and aff.ction; when sagely he considered the inequal-
tie.

tie of his louyng Ladie and hym. Finally, all these thynges considered, seyng his affaires fell out so ill, and that the fire encreased in his breaste, by the imagination of his Mistresses feature and beautie, whiche in beholding had dimmed, and darkened his eyes and senses also with their dulcer bennise, whereof seeing the alteration and violence more hevene (seeing he durst not to make semblante thereof to his Dame) hee resolued to separate hym selfe from that pleasaunte infection: to the ende, that being absent from the Coales, he might rake the reste of the fire, vnder the Cinders of his cogitation. And verelic this his counsaill was verie good and wholesome: if the bodie beeyng absent, hee could also haue estrangched his thoughtes, & forgotten the obiege of his torment. On the other side, he waied the promesse, whiche he had made to the Emperour, which was, to remaine in his seruice: whiche thing for any worldes good, (seyng hym selfe so bounde and vowed unto hym) he would not breake nor violate. In this perplexite rested he more then two long howers, still walking vp and doun the Gardeine, while the Princesse Porphyria, (who drewe with hym the yoke of equall tormentes,) was in counsaill with her Damozelles, as you haue heard in the Chapter preccedent. And I deeme he might haue remained so longer, had it not been for his Squire, who sought hym on all sides, by the commaundement of the Emperour, to come to Dine with hym: who wente so farre from chamber to chamber, and in suche order, that in fine he founde hym dreampynge, and mussing in the Gardeine, in suche wise, that he called hym twise or thrise, beyng verie neare unto hym, before he heard or apperceiued hym: who approchynge more neare to hym, called out on this sorte, Haia Maister, what meane you, are you become deaf, or blinde? For now it is a whole hower since, I haue been here with you, to tell you, how you muste come to the Emperour to Diner, in all whiche while, ye haue not made semblante, eicher to heare or see me. And how? (In

The Hystorie

“ Gods name) more then an hower, saied the Yowthe of the
“ Fairies? Yea forsooche, saied he. But not of these greate
“ howers, whiche you chinke not, but of these shorte howers,
“ whiche passe in so small season, as you maie emploie in cal-
“ lyng you chyse at the leaste. Aha (saied the Yowth) I beleue
“ ye well: For I haue my mynde so busied otherwise, that it
“ maie well be, that not thinking on thee, I haue ne seen nor
“ heard thee. What Sir? And whereon maie you haue your
“ thought so fixed? Unlesse it shold bee, that you were stri-
“ ken with the loue of the Emperours daughter, who is else-
“ med the moste perfecte in beaucie, that is knownen presentlie
“ to bee in the worlde. Verelie if you haue seen her, I chinke
“ you haue tasted enough, whereon so to occupy your though-
“ tes. O Geliaeste (saied he) for Gods loue speake no more to
“ me of that: For I haue never seen her, but to my greate da-
“ mage. Wherefore I prate thee, that inconuenientlie after
“ dinner, my Horse & Harnesse be ready: for I meane, (with-
“ out making any pynne to my determination) to absent my
“ selfe hence, so to banish & defeate this opiniō. I willingly wil
“ Sir, (said the Squire) but by mine honeste, since you haue
“ so farre gone, I feare you halfe losse, if you vse none other
“ remedy but absence. And what thing more expediet may I
“ vse, replied the Yowth. I would wishe you (saide he) to finde
“ meanes to speake to her, and to lett her vnderstande youre
“ Passions, possiblie she will take some pitifull compassion
“ vpon you, or at leaste wise, ye shall receiuē by discouery of
“ your euill, some recure and helpe. For so would I deale if I
“ were in your case. Hence Wotte that thou arte, thinkest
“ thou mee so ill traïned vp, that I shold seeme to giue the
“ leaste suspition possible of my Sorowes, either to her or
“ to any other person, againste all reason? Maye, take thou
“ also good heed from giuyng out anye aduerse speaches I
“ warne thee: considering the greate reproaches whiche I
“ maie incurre by my foly, in that such a simple Knight as I
“ not wittynge my selfe from whence I am, ne euer haue at-
“ chived

of Gerileon.

fol.48.

chived feate, worthy of the fauer of the wort Damozell in , ,
the wylde, dare asprie to seeke the acquaintance of one so , ,
greate a Princesse : who, if I shoulde doe as thou saiest, shee , ,
woxhely scorning mee, would not (I feare) deigne to take , ,
mee for the wortste of her seruauntes, hauing many my bet- , ,
ters in warse place of seruice than that. Wherefore never , ,
moue mee moze of so manifest a folly : And what my Lorde , ,
(saide again Geliaste) how is it that your heart is so base, & , ,
pusillanumous, that ye beare not your self in wort, alwaies , ,
aboue a woman? Not aboue suche a one as she (said he). We- , ,
relie (aunswered the other,) if euer one had seen mee breake , ,
a couple of Launces against a dosighill, (which is easie you , ,
know) & that I were boyled at aduaantage, as you are: also , ,
if I had your beaulte & personage, I know not so gallaunt , ,
a Girle in all this Towne, but shee would thinke her selfe , ,
happie, to haue mee for her frende. Therefore (Maister) my , ,
best aduise and counsell is, that to morrow you shewe your , ,
selfe valiaunt, and couragious in the Justes, whiche shal be: , ,
for (surelie) by that meanes ye shall winne her heart. Thou , ,
speakest now better then y diddest erewhile (said the Youth) . ,
And I will not onelie proue my selfe to morrow at the Ju- , ,
stes: but also (if I liue) will (to make my selfe more renow- , ,
med) goe search straunge aduentures in Greate Britaine, , ,
and Combate with the best Knightes that there be, yea not , ,
exceptyng King Floridamant, who hath so greate renoume , ,
of valiauncie, before I will assuré my selfe to obtaine the , ,
good grace and fauour of my newe Maistresse, whom I am , ,
determined to serue and honour in mine hearte, as long as , ,
life shalbe resident in my bodie, and to her onely will I vow , ,
my loue. Wherfore remeber that, which I haue said to thee, , ,
that after dinner my Varnesse be readie: for I will not bee , ,
knowen to morrowe when I shal come to the Justes. Mai- , ,
ster, saide Geliaste, trouble your selfe no moze about that, for , ,
eche thing shall be prest at your pleasure.

So secretlie devising together, they arrived in the Em- , ,
perours

The Hystorie

versours Halle where the Tables were couered against dinner. And the Emperour being set vounre, caused þ youth to be placed next vnto hym, so to doe hym the more honour, and all his Knights & Barons after hym in order: who at dinner time were all armed with their Swardeſ by their ſides, and Helmeſ on their headeſ, & did eare haueing their Beueres put by: the Gates of the Hallace being all ſhut, and many Souldiers about þ ſame, to be their guardes. Whereat the Youthe of the Fairies muſche meruelling, could not but enquire, whether it were the cuſtome of the Countrie, ſo to diue Armed: thereby to honour the Emperour the more, who onelie was vnharnized, or if there were anie deeper occation, which draue them ſo to doe. Know Youthe, ſaide the Emperour) that accordanſyng to your opinion, this is not doen without cauſe. For againſte ſuche a daie as to morow (which is the daie of my natiuitie) I haue annually accouſtomed to make a moſte ſumptuous Feaſt, wherunto I call all my moſte priuate frendes, and grande Princes of mine Empire, as you ſee here preſent, & appoint Juges and Tournementes, and all other ſortes of paſtime. But whiles we are in miſche and feaſting, we alwaies ſeele our ſelues troubled in ſome ſort, by the invaſions of a monſtrous and unreaſonable bigge Giaſte called Ferclafe, who keepeſ an Houle, not paſte fower or fiue Miles hence, in a certeine Rocke caue, commonly called Rocke Alpine: who with his twoo Breethren, who are neither better nor leſſer then hee, and another rauenous knell of Dogges whiche hee keeþ, neuer faileth as to morowe, to come and doe ſome ouerage to ſome of the Cittie: as to rauiſhe ſome maide, or murther ſome Knight. In ſo muſche, that the laſt yere, hee came hicher euuen into this Hall, and with his greate Club, euuen in my preſence, hee cutte of the Dukes head of Chalcyde, who was a Knight righte wiſe and valiaunc. And furthermore this night laſt paſt, word was brought vnto mee that he had rauiſhed a gentilmanſ daughter of my Court, caſtled

Florenſe

of Gerileon.

fol.49.

Florenses, who nowe is not here for the greate dolour hee ,
hach of þ losse of his daughter. And doeth me so many other ,
outrages (against which I can finde no remedie nor order, ,
for that hee still keepeth hym selfe encloased in his Rockie
Cabin) that I can not well declare theym. Manie worthy
Knighees there haue beene as well of this Empire, as els
where, that haue foughht with him hande to hande, but never
was seen any to retorne: for either he quicklie killeth the
þr elles quietly keepeth them in Prison: and amongst the
rest he hath one, if happlie he be not dead, who was the best
of all my retinewe, and for whom (as well therfore, as that
he is my newewe) I am muche sorrowfull, and hee is called
Pharisor. And thus ye nowe knowe, why my folkes not of
their owne courtesie, but straitly constrained thereto, take
themselues thus to their Gardes. Pea, would GOD it had
coste me the halfe of mine Empire, that some good knight
had ridde these Costes of hym. For I doubt me, that at the
Julles to morowe, he wil doe vs some mischief, sayng he co-
meth not to daie, for his wonted hower is past. Care ye not
(my Leige) saide the Youtche of the Fairies when the Em-
perour had done speaking. For God who leaueth not anie
wicked Act unpunished, will deliuere you well of the dama-
ges þ they haue dooren you, through his grace, guerdonyng
them accordyng to desertes. If he sette not hande thereto,
said the Emperour (I feare me) it is unpossible for any hu-
man wight to banquish the. For this Ferclast who is the
strongest of them all, underþ not so hard yron, that with his
þt. handes he easelie pulleth not in peeces, soner then one of
vs, a Branche or Spig of a Tree: and carieth a Club so
bigge and monstruous, that fourre strong men cannot lift it
up from the grounde: with whiche I beleue there is not so
sure an Armour, nor so stiffe a Shielde, but hee will with one
stroake breake it to pouder. And his brethen Ergoferant
and Androfor, haue some whiles a battle Axe, so sharpe and
pearcing, that there is neither yron nor Steele, of what

N.s. hardnesse

The Hystoric

hardnes souer, whiche stieth not in peeces at the acciunte
therof: otherwhiles they carie eche of them the Clapers of
twoo Belles, whiche they had brought into their Gauie,
from Sainct Peters Steeple of this Towne, the greate-
test thinges that euer were seene, whiche they handle and
weild, as well as one of vs would doe his Swerde: Briefly
that is the moste hideous thing to beholde, and horriblie to
heare, that euer was coulde or related.

So with suche and other like talke they passed away the
tyme, vntill the Table was taken vp, and then after dinner
the Youth seperated hym selfe so well as he could, from the
other knyghtes, with whom he could haue beene content to
haue talked more of the Giances: of whom althoughe they
coulde hym marueilles, yet hee went to see his Squire at
the Stable, where his Horse and Helaste was, whom hee
founde both readie Sadled and Bridled. Beeyng garnised
with the good Armour whiche the Fairie had giuen hym,
hee mounted vpon the good steede *Lycoccephal*, and Ge-
laeste vpon his, and so demaundynge the waie to Rocke
Alpine, chei Cooke on that waie, whiche was caught cheim,
leauyng them astonished at their hardines, of whom they
had demaunded the waie, ecb one iudging that chei men to
crie some maistries with the Giances. But Gelaeste, whom
this game pleased not best, haþ no delice to give and leſſe as
he was wont, but rather trembled for feare, seeing his man-
ner and hym drave neere to the Denne of suche Giances,
saþynge to hym. Alas Maister: why purpose you to go spille
your selfe? whither is it, that you goe? or what will ye doe?
moe is me, haue you no regardes of your selfe? what meane
you to cast your self into the fire which will assuredly burne
you? you haue heard y in this Rocke Alpine are suche mon-
struous Giances, as wil soone rent & teare you in peeces,
and yet goe you chicher? But what thinks you to doe therer?
when as you well know, that chei haue destroyed and put to
death an infinite number of so valiaunt Knyghtes, whiche
chicher

thither went, and never retourned. Hold thy tongue, Beast (saide the Youth) for if they kill mee (as thou saiest) I shall bee deliuered from the moste miserable tormente that ever poore wretch endured: and if I chaunce to vanquish them, I shal get boch great renoume, & also the Emperous fauour: & possibly mo:re ouer (which most I desire) the good will of the Princesse *Porphyria*. And so I shal be exempte from my passion, or at least wise, somewhat eased: supposing by this little seruice, which I shall do her herein, that she shall haue some occasion to fauour mee, and to make mo:re accompt of me then euer she yet did. And if thou bee so affraide as thou makest semblant to be, thou maist hyde thee in some part of the Rocke, vntil such time that thou seest me either vanquished or vanquished of y Giances. The devill take me if I hide me in their Rockes, said *Gebast*, for if these monsters finde mee there, they will eate mee all vp at a Nosell: wherefore thinke not that I will euer leaue you. Doe therein as thou wilt, said y YOUTH. And with such talke passed they the tyme, all the long waine, vntil they arived in a certayne wood, which was not farre from the Rocke *Alpine*. Wherein when they were entered a litle, they heard the voice of a Damozel, who complained sorrowfully. They staiyng their Horses to understande what it was, apperceived the foulest villayn that euer was seen, & not so disfigured, but farre worse apparelled. For his cloathing was so rent and corne, that it shewey the one halse of his Reshe more filchy and blacke, then anie Collar or Chimnessweper of the Citie, which felow caried on his shoulders a sacke ful of somwhat. Whom the Youth espyng, remained mo:re coy, as well in that he heard again the former voice, as that he would also see whither the Paisaunt went: who at length he sawe to rest hymself neare to a grete Ditch, whiche was aboue the wood, and thare casting his sacke on the ground, he heard hym speake in this wise, counterfayting his boyce. Madame, had you not rather bee beloued of a braue and valiant Knight and Gentleman

The Hystorie

lement, who will take you to his spowse and wife, if so you be pleased: then to suffer your selfe, perishe and die this rashly. For here now is the ditche wherin you must be douned. Then heard he a boyce frō out of the sacke, whiche said, yea willyngly: But I would faine see hym. Then the Villaine unbindyng his Sacke whiche was of Tanned Leather, plucked out the headde of a braue Damozell, whiche was there within: who looking all about her, demanded of him where the gentleman was that spake to her. Beholde here, Wenche (saied the Russian by hym self) secyng his handes on his side brauely, and marching gallantly five or sixe tyme aboute the Sacke: goe wicked Villaine saied the Damozell) I had rather bee dismembred, by peicemeale, then that thy filchy fleshe should couerthe myne. Scarfe had she saied so, but the Villaine angryng shut her againe in the Sacke, and was aboute to caste her into the Ditch: when as the Youth hauyng seen all the matter, ranne to hym and staid his purpose, saipng. Rascall, what is this that thou hast in this Sacke? Sir, saied he, it is the bolster of an olde bed, whiche my Father Ferclast hath bidden me to cast into this ditch, because it is rottē. Thou liest, saied the Youth, for me thought I sawe a Damozell, who because shē would not condiscende to thy filchy lust, thou wouldest cast into this Ditch. But sir, you shall supply her rowme: and in steede of her, embe your unhappy daies: and so takynge hym by the beard, he comauanded his Squire to vnloose the Lady from out of the sacke, wherein he put the pernicious Peasance, his head downewardes, and so caste hym into the Ditch: whiche doen, he demanded of the Damozel frō whence she was: and why they would haue douned her? Whereto she answered and said. Worthy sir I am daughter to one of the Emperors knyghtes: who was take awaie yesternight frō out of the cittie by the Giant Ferclast, to whose disorderable lust, because I would not willyngly obate, he hath comauanded this villaine on this wise to make me away: frō whence you

you haue sauied me, and therof I harcely thanke you. And if it mate please you, to go with me to my father's house in the cittie, he will for your happie deliuerynge of me, reward you to his power, althoough not accordançyng to your deseruyngs. Far well I knowe, that he is sorrowfull for my sake. Damozell (saied the Knight) of Guerdon for your deliuerie I smalp care, leyng that therein I haue doen but my duerie, whiche is to succour Ladies oppresed as you were. And to retourne into the Cittie as yet, I must not, because I haue first vowed to fight with the Giant Ferclaste, to see whether he be suche an one as men saie : as well to reuenge the outrage whiche he hath doen to you: as also to ridde the world of so pernicious a Plague and hurcefull, as he is. All which while, you maie remaine here with my Squire, if you haue any feare of hym. Faire sir (saied she) I shall dooe all, as ic pleaseth you, for in greater perill can I not bee, then that, whereof you haue deliuered mee. And so the Damozell remained with Gieliste in the Foresse, hidden in the thickest bushe thei could finde : bitterlie bewaylyng the perill of the Youthe of the Fairies, who was departed from theim, and gone to fight with the Giantes at Rocke Alpine.

The Youthe of the Fairies beyng departed from his Squire, did so muche, that at laste hee came to the Castle of Rocke Alpine, where beeyng discouered by the Giantes folkes, they came & assaulted hym on all sides, to kill hym or take hym Prisoner. But he vsed theim so, that having slaine some of theim, the reste durste not approache hym: which thing the Giauntes within their Rocke seeyng, came thjther theim selues in person to take hym: but he bare and defended hymself so valiauntly, that after he had slaine two of them, that is to wit, Ferclaste and Androfort, he sauied the life of Ergofarans, who yelded hym selfe to hym.

N. iij. ¶ The

The Hystoric

The xvij. Chapter.



HE YOUNG of the Fairies being depar-
ted fr̄ the Damozell, and his Squire,
whom he had leste hid in the Woodde:
wente not verie farre, but that he was
out, and then he apperced the Castle
of Rocke Alpine, not farre from hym,
in a place verie steepe and high: on the
coppe wherof, was a Thicket, or little Woodde, continual-
ly pestered and stroyed with Theues and Robbers, who
there still lurked to espie, if any one passed before the lod-
gyng of the Giauntes, that they might sodainly sette vpon
them, & put them to the spoile: with whose coine & harnesse
they furnished them selues afterward. These fellowes espi-
yng the yonge Knight comyng on horsebacke soberly that
waie, cherte of fourtie of the wightest and beste horsemen
emong them, came voun spedelie, of purpose to take hym,
whom he quietly suffered to approche hym, to the intent he
might speake to them: but when they thought them selues
vere enough, one of them whiche came forermoste, and was
Capitaine of the Giauntes Garde, called Nitrocarde, ha-
nyng discried the Knight, who as yet had his Helmette bn-
closed, seyyng hym so yonge and faire, and so well horsed,
sated vnto hym. Hola faire Donne, alight, alight, for this
will serue to carrye our maister Ferclasse, when hee goeth a
progresse, seyyng hee shalde can finde a better, or a stronger
to beare hym in my iudgemente. Doe this & I will wooke
so with hym, that (because you seeme so faire and beautiful)
he shall saue your life; but then you muste serue hym for a
Lackie: and I beleue, he will bee conent to take you to his
Page, at my entreataunce, but you shall gloue me for my la-
bour this faire Harnesse whiche you weare. Whē the yonge
Knight had heard hym thus speakyng, he aunswered hym,
I am come herher, to giue thee and thy Maister also this
harnesse,

harnesse, whiche thou seest in my hande, shewyng hym his
Speare: whiche presently he put in Reste, and pricked the
good Horsse Lycocphal with his Spurres, who enflamed
like lightayng, ranne wisch suche force, that the firsste whom
he attaiated, was the laid Mistrocard, who had so spoken to
hun. And so ic besel, y he sent his Speare forcibly through
the middest of his bodie, whiche appeared behynde more
then twos fathomes: whereat the others thus leyng their
Maister whiche was so valiaunte, and who earst had slaine
and taken so many gallaunce knigthes, without euer foile
or damage of his owne bodie, slaine so quite outright, with
the sodaine stroke of the Speare, thei were muche astonis-
hed. Neuerthelesse, seyng them selues so many agaist one,
in hope to wearie hym, thei ranne vpon hym, and enclosed
hym rounde aboue, with greate Swords and Halberdes,
wherewich thei gane hym many a soule st. oake vpon his
Sphield: but it was so good, that thei vid theim selues more
hurte then hym, and the Swords wherewich thei stroke
hym, flewe backe out of their handes, whereof thei were
muche abashed. But to dispatche hym self the soner of these
Baskalles, he tooke Swoarde in hande, vsing the same with
suche dextericie and surle, that those thre whiche encro-
ched so fiercelie vpon hym to kill his Horsse, wente by his
helpe to heare thelr Capitaine compaignte, into an other
worlde. The sight wherel so vexed the rest, that they heinde
hym rounde aboue, bothe behinde and before: meanyng
miserable to Massacre him with their Axes, Clubbes, and
Speare staues. But he handled them so, that in lesse then
an hower, cenne of them laye deade slaine vpon the ground:
whiche sight so affrighted the reste, that happie was he,
which was farrewell of from this newe found Enemie. And
so retiryng still backe, knowyng that they coulde in no-
wise endamage hym, by reason of the surenesse of his Har-
nisse, thei straighewaies devised with themselues, to trie, if
they could kill his Horsse: in suche wise that one of them
stroake

The Hystorie

The xij. Chapter.



HE YOUNG of the Fairies being depar-
ted fr̄ the Damozell, and his Squire,
whom he had leste hid in the Woodde;
wence not verie farre, but that he was
out, and then he apperelued the Castle
of Rocke Alpine, not farre from hym,
in a place verie steepe and high: on the
coppe wherof, was a Thicker, or little Woodde, continual-
ly pestered and stroyed with Theues and Robbers, who
there still lurked to espie, if any one passed before the lod-
gyng of the Giauntes, that they might sodainly sette vpon
them, & put them to the spoile: with whose coine & harness
they furnished them selues afterward. These fellowes espie-
yng the yonge Knight comyng on horsebacke soberly that
waie, thirtie or fourtie of the wightest and beste horsemen
among them, came voun spedelie, of purpose to take hym,
whom he quiterly suffered to approche hym, to the intent he
might speake to them: but when they thought them selues
vere enough, one of them whiche came foremost, and was
Capitaine of the Giauntes Garde, called Mitrocarde, ha-
nyng discried the Knight, who as yet had his Helmette ba-
closed, seyng hym so yonge and faire, and so well horsed,
» fated vnto hym. Vola faire Sonne, alight, alight, for this
» will serue to carrye our maister Ferclasse, when hee goeth a
» progresse, seyng hee shalre can finde a better, or a stronger
» to beare hym in my iudgemente. Doe this & I will wooke
» so with hym, that (because you seeme so faire and beautiful)
» he shall saue your life; but then you muste serue hym for a
» Lackie: and I beleue, he will bee content to take you to his
» Page, at my entreatance, but you shall giue me for my la-
» bour this faire Harnessse whiche you weare. Whē the yonge
» Knight had heard hym thus speakynge, he aunswere hym,
» I am come herher, to giue thee and thy Maister also this
harnessse,

harnesse, whiche thou seest in my hande, shewynge hym his
Speare: whiche presently he put in Reste, and ywicked the
good Horse *Lycacephal* with his Spurres, who enflamed
like lightnyng, ranne with suche force, that the friste whom
he accatached, was the said *Murocard*, who had so spoken to
him. And so it besell, þ he sent his Speare forcibly through
the middest of his bodie, whiche appeared behynde more
then twos fachomes: whereat the ocheres thus leyng their
Maister whiche was so valiaunte, and who earst had slaine
and taken so many gallaunce knyghtes, without euer foile
or damage of his owne bodie, slaine so quicke outright, with
the sodaine stroake of the Speare, thei were muche astont-
shed. Neuerthelesse, leyng them selues so many agaist one,
in hope to wearie hym, thei ranne vpon hym, and enclosed
hym rounde aboue, with greate Swords and Halberdes,
wherewich thei gaue hym manþ a foule st. vake vpon his
Shield: but it was so good, that thei did theim selues more
hurte then hym, and the Swords wherewich thei stroake
hym, fleywe backe out of thei handes, whereof thei were
muche abalhed. But to dispatche hym self the soner of these
Raskalles, he tooke Swoarde in hande, vsing the same with
suche dextericie and furie, that those thre whiche encro-
ched so fiercelie vpon hym to kill his Horse, wente by his
helpe to heare their Capitaine compaignie, into an ocher
world. The sight wherelso vexte the rest, that they heinde
hym rounde aboue, boþe behinde and before: meanyng
miserable to Hellacke him with thei Axes, Clubbes, and
Speare staves. But he hanuled theim so, that in lesse then
an hower, cenne of thei late deade slaine vpon the ground;
whiche sight so affrachid the rest, that happy was he,
which was farþe of from thi newe found Enemite. And
so retiryng still backe, knowyng that they coulden in no-
wise endamage hym, by reason of the surenesse of his Har-
nasse, thei straightwaies denised with theim selues, to telle, if
they could kill his Horse: in syche wise that one of theim
stroake

.22.103

The Hystorie

stroake hym by chaunce, betweene the Trappers of Iron
with a Launce, and somewhat wounded hym, but he rested
not long. Skotfree. For the Hoise beeynge so hurte and gal-
led, ranne vpon hym with suche force, that (willed or nilled
his Maister) strikyng hym with his twoo binder steece, he
burke his paunche, sendyng hym twoo yarde from the place
where he stooode, so that his bowelles fell out of his beallite:
and then oþer y appþoching to the rest, helped his Maister
to supplant them: who so handled and encreated them, that after
their hurtes, they neither needed Surgeon, nor Physi-
cian. And he had bþought them to suche passe that ther
were aboue to take their hecles: when the rest whiche re-
mained vpon the Rocke, attandyng his takyng, that his
bodie myght be empysoned, and that ther myght calle Dice
for his Armour and spoile, seeing their compaignons sped
so ill, ran hastyly to helpe them, at once cryng atoudre. Take
heed in any wise that he escape not: for our Lordes the Gi-
aunces will bee muche offended, if ther haue han not anone,
to vse at their pleasure, and to punishe hym for his presump-
tuousnesse, in that he hath killed so many of their folkes.
At this ther crie, the Giaunces whiche were within the
Rockes, castyng Dice who shold haue the Maidenheade
of a certayne faire young Damozell, whom they had rau-
ished thre or four daies agoe, who was Niece to the Em-
perour of Constantynople, and Suster to Pharis the half-
aunt and worthy Knight, whom they kept also in Prison,
they sterte vp all thre, to see what the matter was, and saw
on the plaine, how their folkes were taskyd by the Youthe
of the Fairies, who so had handeld them, that more then
twentie of them were alreadie dead in the field: and angrie
was he onely because the Giaunces came not. For muche
was his minde sette, and greate was his desire to kill those
Monsters, whiche chyng the Giaunces leyng, ther roared
like Bulles with their voyce, making suche bruite, that the
gouest harted would therat haue trembled for feare. Oþe
villaines

Gillaines and Dogges, what meane you, that ye doe not
byng vs this presumptuous and gluttonous pryncockes,,
that wee might recompence hym for the damage that he,,
hath done to your fellowes? We charge you dispatche it,,
quickeley: for otherwise if we once come dounne among you,,
both you and hee shall be hanged with our owne handes vp,,
pon these Trees. Then staiyng to see the knyght either ta-,,
ken or slaine, they sawe hym so lustely hake and hew, that
he quicke cut of the arme of one of those whiche (hearing the
thundercryng and manacyng wordes of the Gaintes) would
haue done more then the reste in takyng his Hoysle by the
bridle. Whiche another seyng, and willyng to shew hym-
selfe more nimble in this pointe then his fellowe, the Hoysle
stamped vpon his Belly, and so sodainly slew hym. Then
running amogges the thickest of them, who laboured pain-
fully for feare of the Gaintes their maisters to take him, he
brought them to suche an exgent, that dispersyng theim-
selues this waie and that waie, for feare of his blowes, they
durst not any of theim after that, come neere hym: whiche
the Gaint Ferclast seyng, saied to his brother *Androfort*,
who was youngest of the three, for that he was alreadie ar-
med, as one that had not long afore becne robbing in some
odde place: I praye you Brother (quoth hee) goe you to
seche in yonder dapper Ponker, who so handlech our Fol-
kes: and kill those Cowardes whiche so flee from hym.
But take ye heede that ye neither kill hym nor his Hoysle,
for he seemeth faire and good, and I beleue he woulde carry
mee verie well, and we wil burne the other quicke, or make
hym die cruelle. Verely (saied *Androfort*) you speake well,
for he hath truely deserued it, and my selfe will take paines
to punishe hym with myne owne handes, and you shall haue
his Hoysle for your parte: whiche if hee cannot beare you, I
feare me none elles will, and my Brother *Ergoferarnt* shall
haue his shielde, for it is so good, that our folkes could in
no wise endamage nor perce it with their Dartes and Ar-
rows.

D.J. rowes

The Hystorie

rowes . Wherefore to the ende that I may goe take hym
and not kill hym let one bring mee my Clapper of the bell,
for therewith I will but touche hym a little , to make hym
fall doun the sooner : whiche done , I will laie hande vpon
pon hym , and bring hym hither vpon my Necke . Then in-
continently there issued out the Rocke fower greate Lub-
bers , who with muche paine brought foorth the greace
Clapper of the Bell , whiche he tooke and caste easly vpon
his Arme , and ranne in great hast towarde the knight : who
seyng hym come , was therat rright ioyous . But as hee
approached towardes hym , he heard hym speake to his fol-
kes , saiyng . Ha Caitifes and Dastardes , by the Bearde of
the mightie God Jupiter , my brother will make you all be
hanged , for fleeuyng from this squallishe Elfe here . But one
of them aunswered hym shoulde againe and saied : I knowe
not well how you will spedde , if you come once there where
we haue been . Therat the Giane beyng chassed , gaue hym
so greate a blowe with his Clapper vpon the head , that hee
passhed out all his Braines , and laied hym fo starke dead
on the ground . And appoaching neare to the Pouch of the
Fairies saied , howe nowe prettie Syr , haue you not plaied
rexe , and delt desperatly inough , here : must I nedes burne
thee quicke , (seelie Caitiffe) for the Tholer that thou hast
caused in mee , and my Brethren ? I knowe not what thou
wilt dooe (saide the Knight) but garde thy selfe well from
mee , for I meane to sende thee packyng with hym whom
euernow so rashely thou hast slaine . O ho (saide the Giant)
in mockyng wise , seyng hym come with a speare , couched
in Reste against hym , see here a retchelesse boye : but scarce
had he so saied , but that the Knight had striken his Launce
twoo foote and more within his body , wherewich he fell to
the grounde : neuerthelesse he soone rose againe , and came
to haue killed his horse , nothing remembryng his promise
made to his brother . But the Knight seyng hym come , a-
lighted soone doun , and with his Swerde drawne , spedde
hym

hymself towarde the Giant, who discharged such a stroake
vpon his shielde, thinking to fell him (according to his foze
promise) that the Knight kneeled dounne readie to fall on
his face: and with that stroake (so strong it was) had he put
hym in like estate as he did the other afore, had it not beene
for his good Shielde and Arme whiche susteined it with
suche vertue, that the Clapper flew out of the Giances
handes: whiche as he stowped to take vp, the Knight wisely
markyng how the matter went, thuste his Swerde so far
through the Giances backe, that hee fell starkē dead on the
ground, roaryng like an Oxe, when hee is by the Butcher
striken dounne: in suche sorte, that hee was well heard of by
Bretayn, who starkē mad for rage, entered into their caue,
and there takyng suche Harnesse as they had, Ferclaste with
his Clubbe, and Ergoferant with his Cymeter, they issued
forth, and went to assaile the gentle Knight of the Fairies,
who attended them w^t great deuotion meaning so to handle
them, as hee had done their b^rother, all on foote as he was.
Then beholde, Ferclaste arived firste, who quietyng his fol-
kes (which asfarre of stille assailed hym with Daries & Ar-
rowes on all sides) saied vnto hym: O mischeuous wretch,,
what vengeance may I take of one so wicked as thou art,,
equall to the damage whiche thou haste done vnto mee, in,,
slaiyng so many of my folkes, and (whiche is to mee moze,,
vnsuppor^table then that) my puissant b^rother Androforte,,
who (if thou hadst not traiterously vsed) would haue slain a,,
thousande suche as thou arte: Oh woe is mee, that the sub-,,
iect thereof is no greater. And if I knewe, that thou were,,
in seruice with that wicked Emperour of Constantinople,,
and that he had sent thee hicher, to doe this that thou haste,,
done, I shold therat be somewhat more comforted, in that,,
I could extende the reuengement of the death of my Bro-,,
ther vpon hym by to morowe: for as soone as I haue slaine,,
thee with this my Club, I will assemble sixe hundred men,,
to goe kill hym, yea eu'en in his Pallace, and all his folkes,,

D. is. also,

The Hystorie

“ also which shal be easie for me to do, whiles they apply them
“ selues to feasting and drunkenesse as their custome is.
“ Wherefore tell mee if thou bee one of his, to the ende that
“ then I may dispatch thee the sooner, otherwise I will
“ make thee die the cruellest death that euer was spoken of.

Verely I am of the Emperours craine (saide the Knight)
“ but thou arte not yet preste and readie to doe as thou prea-
“ chest, so I will quickly God willing seale thee a Quittance
“ for any such matter. The Giant hearyng hym so saie, came
angerlie with his Clubbe, to discharge so greate a stroake
vpon his Helmet, and so to haue killed hym, that the same
quite babuckled and unlaced, and fell to the grounde,
together with the Gaintes Clubbe, whiche also fell out of his
fistes, whiche so were winched that he felte them not. Then
the other Giaunce Ergoferant seyng his heade bare, came of
purpose to haue cutte it in twaine, but the blowe lighc vpon
the shield, whiche was so violent, that he fell backward on
the grounde, his Cimetere fallyng out of his fistes, as the
Clubbe did from his brother: whiche whiles he sought for,
the Knight beeyng actiu and nimble, starte vp lightlie, and
wenc (disarmed as his heade was) towardes Ferclaste: who
had gotten his Clubbe into his handes, wherewith he had
brained hym, if by his agilitie he had not sleightlie stepped
a side, to shunne the stroake: whiche was so vehement and
horrible, that the Giaunce could not recouer againe his
Club, beynge entred more then twoo foote into the ground.
Which caused that whiles he striued to pull it out to strike
the Knight againe withall, he came and gaue hym such a
blowe ouer the armes, that he fell dounne flatte vpon the
stumpes, his armes beeyng cutte of by the elbowes. This
doen, the other Giant seyng his brother so maymed, came
towardes the Knight with his Clubbe in his hand, whiche
he had gotten out of the grounde, and all enraged, leaued
such a blowe at his head, that if it had not light partly vpon
his shield, he had been dispatched. Notwithstandyng,
the

the blow was so greate, that it dashed th^r shield full against his bare heade: in such^e sorte that it made a deepe wounde: prouided still, that the Clubbe fell out of the Giances han- des againe: whiche when he wente to recover, the Knight saelyng his blood, whiche he never before had seen, to runne a long his tender face, was so enraged that he had rather haue been deade, then not to bee reuenged, of that outrage. And therevpon he ranne sobainlie vnto Faraste, to whom (as he was holdyng his Clubbe in his leste hande, to haue wounded hym) he caught such^e a rappe, that he cutte of the other arme, Clubbe and all. Whereat the Giaunte beeyng madde and enraged, ranne vppon hym, and gaue hym such^e a blowe with his foote, that he smote hym to the grounde: neuerthelesse, he sone rose vp againe, and eselone^s encoun- tering the other Giaunte, whiche came asthe towardes hym, he lente hym such^e a blowe on the crowne (leapynge ta- stelle into þ ayre, for otherwise he could not haue doen it) & dashed it so sore, that with the greate paine he felte there- by, he fell dounie and sounded in the feld^e. Then seeyng hym selfe as he thought, dispatched of this fellowe, he came to- wardes the other, who with greate blowes of his feete still assailed hym: but hee whiche well knewe howe muche they weighed, startyng somewhat aside, cutte of one of his leg- ges iuste in the gartering place: whereat the Giaunt fell to the grounde: wherevpon the Knight approchynge vnto hym, cutte of the other also.

Then he seeyng hymselfe in so piteous estate, begann to howle and crie like a Wolfe, reyling and blasphemynge all his Gods, & in this sorte bat hing himself in his owne bloud, hee ended his miserable life. The Knight seeyng hym selfe in so hor^e space to haue attchiued so great a victorie in van- quishing th^r so monstruous Giances, and bringing their whole Crewe to such^e extremicie: that they durst not once open their mouches to sprake one worde (for that their go-
 ~~—nours~~ were thus slaine) after most devout thankes ge-

13
The Hystorie

uen to God (without whose grace he wel knewe that he neuer could haue quelled those Monstres:) HEE tooke vp his Helmet whiche lay on the grounde, and went towardes the rest of the Gaintes Crewe and folkes that were yet aliue: with full purpose to destroye them all, because of the greevous wound whiche hee had receiuied in his head. But they seeing hym come fiercely and furiously towardes them, kneled all doun, and humbly besought hym of Pardon: preterding for them selues, that sith it is a Seruaunte duetie to obeye his Maister (they being seruauntes to the Gaintes, at whose charges and costes thei were kept and nourished) could do no lesse but accomplish to their powers, their Heles and Commaundementes; and that it would please him to pardone them, as persons beyng without fault: for that (saying onely for their Maisters willes) they would never haue endamaged him. Noe, noe, said the knight al enraged, one must not obaye their Maister to doe euill, and muche lesse to take hyre of any, to suche ende: but you your selues beyng as ill as they, cooke pleasure to be in their company, therby to enriche your selues, with the spoyle of poore passengers: wherefore as Ministres of their wickednesse I will cause you all to die: at whiche word he slewe one, which was hiest, because (of a stuborne minde) he would not knele doun. But seyng all the others so humble, that they neither fledde nor made other defence, consideryng that it was noe lesse vertue for a man to vanquish and moderate his affections, and anger in shewyng hym selfe piceous and mercifull towardes the vanquished, then to shewe himselfe hardie and couragious to ouercome them, as hee whiche was both courteous and kinde of nature: And knowyng, that it were no praise wchyp to destrope those, which resisted not, allaying (as they saye) his wine with water, hee pardoned & tooke them to mercie louinglie, upon condition, that thei shoulde after that tyme still be at his comaundement, which thing w common accord they promised him to fulfill. This
doeu

doen, he sent to seek his Horse, and mountyng vpon hym, he went towardes the Rocke, as well to deliuer the Prisoners therin, as to applie some Plaister or medicine to the wound in his head. For the doing whereof, he asked if there were any amongst them, that was skilled in Chirurgerie whereto it was aunswered, that there was one amongst them in that Arte most excellent, whiche accustomably did heale all those knightes, whom the Gaintes hauing wounded would not kill, but famishe to death in Prison; whiche person had one kinde of Dymemente, of suche vertue, that there was never so greate a wound, but therewith in thre daisies it would be well healed, & thoroughly cured as though it had never been. And how is he called? saide the Knigthe. he hath no name, maister Rabalon, aunswered they againe. Then saide the Knight: needes muste I haue hym for my seruaunt, seeing he is so skilful, if in case he will like thereof. For against his will I meane not to constraine hym to doe any thing. I thinke well (said one of the compaines) that he would rather bee with you, then with the Gaintes: for they tooke hym perforce from the Emperour, beecause of his greate cunning, and haue dealt with hym verie uncourteously. And in so saying, they arriued in the Rocke, whiche was finely cut & carued within like unto a Hallace, whereat the Mouth was greatly astonied. For there were Valles, Thābers, Wardropes bothe hie & lowe made, by great skill and industrie, whiche the Gaintes had founded not longe afore, when with their hugge force, they had hollowed the Rocke, which was meruelous hard, to keape them in more safetie: and therein none entred but by one onely Gate, althoough within, were more then sixtie, as well of Chambers as prisons, which all were shut vp with mighty keies. The whiche the knight tooke as soone as he was entered, hauyng found them vpon a Table, tyed all together with an hugge Chaine of yron, whiche the Porter had left there, fearing that the knigthe asking for him, and being informed

.d.101

The Hystorie

of his wickednesse and crueltie towardes the Prisoners, woulde reward hym according to his deserthes, like as his Maisters were: and therefore bid he himself, in a vaste and darkesome caue, vnder a Tunne where he was smothered, and so he ended his wicked life. But hee soone founde the good Chirurgian Maister Rabalon: who at the entrie of the doore crooched doune humbly on his knée, to desire him of Pardon. The Youtch taking hym by the hande, made hym stande vp, saiyng: I will not pardon thee: for why, thou never offendest mee, and therefore thou hast no neede to aske mercie, but for this that I heare saie, that thou hast appertained to the good Imperour of Constantinople, towardes whom it is expedient that thou goe to impetracie that, whiche thou requirest of mee, for the offence that thou hast wrought, in beeynge so long absent from his companie, to serue such mischiuous Tyrauntes as thou hast doen here: and I will that from mee, thou do present & shew these dead Giaunces and knyghtes, beynge layde vpon some Chariot, to his Maiestie. For I wotte well, that knowing of their destruction, he will be muche ioyous, considerynge the manifolde annoyes whiche they haue still wought hym: & in thy companie shall goe all the Prisoners whiche are within, to thanke (for their deliuerie) the faire Princesse Porphyrie his Daugher after humble salutations to her done on my behalfe: for she alone is the cause hereof. And if she do enquire, who hath done it, tell thou her that it was the Youtche of the Fairies, the leaste of her Seruitours (if for one she will accepte hym) though farre unworthy of suche preferment. Then gaue he him the keyes to go deliuer the prisoners, but seeing hym to besomewhat wounded, firsste hee gaue him some of his Dyntmentes to his sore: whiche had suche speedy operacion, because the wound was not greate, that the next morayng it was whole and sonnde. But whyles he was thus applying his Medicine, hee sawe the Giaunces (whom he had pardoned, and who stode without) enter

ter fearefully, trembyng and quaking to hyde them selues
here and there with greate diligence. Wher at the Yough
lacing his Helmet and taking his Shielde and Swerde, set
forwarde out of the Gate to see what was happened: and he
apperceiued the Giaunte Ergoferant to come that waie (for
he had not quiche killed hym as the other s were, but onelie
amazed hym with a blow uppon his head) who beyng come
againe to hym selfe, hauing cast awaie his Battell Axe, and
leste of his Helmet, Shield & Jacke, & leyyng his brethren
dead, came and prostrated hymselfe at the Knights feete
(whom he founde wth Swerde and Target in hande rea-
dy) cravynge hym humbly of Pardon. The Yough whos was
right mercifull, seyng hym (contrary to those of his kind)
so meeke, frefly pardoned hym, conditionally (norwithstan-
dync) that he shold goe wth the rest of the Prisoners the
morrow followyng, to aske Pardon of the Imperour, for
the harmes whiche he had done him, and to chanke the Prin-
cessle Porphyria for his life so sauad, & to presence to her his
seruice, doyng still what she shold appoint hym, wherto he
gladly condiscended: and thereupon bee commaunded hym
to set free the Prisoners and to aske theim forgiuenes for
the damage whiche he had long done vnto theim, whiche
thing he did. Immediatly he tooke the keyes whiche Mai-
ster Rabalon had in his hande, and went to deliuer the Pri-
soners, who seeing him, thought what he had come for some
other purpose. But much were they ameruiled, when they
saw hym kneele downe before theim, askyng theim forgiue-
nes, prayng þ for the loue of hym whiche was cause of their
deliueraunce, and who had pardoneyd hym, it would please
them also to vse the like courtesie towardes hym: whereto
they willingly agreed, for that this same Giane (as it were
quite contrarie in nature and disposition to his brethren)
had afore tyme bene cause that they were well vsed and en-
treated: for he was full courteous and pitifull, wherfore he
ledde them towardes the Yough, whom they humbly chan-

The Hystorie

Red for such a good tourne, offering hym their service per-
petually from that date forwarde: especially the Knight
Pharisor, who greatly requested hym that he would vouch-
safe to take hym into his company: promising that he would
bee to hym a true and loyall frende, and that noughe but
death shold haue force to ende their amicite. All whiche the
Youth was well pleased of. And for that night wch the Gi-
ant *Ergoferant*, who shewed hym selfe full humble and dili-
gent to doe hym honour and seruice and the Prisoners li-
kewise, he rested in the Rocke till the next morowe.

The Giant *Ergoferant* being departed from Rocke *Al-
pine*, to accomplithe his promise towardes the Em-
perour of Constantinople, mette by the waie the vil-
laine whom the Youth of the Fairies had caste into
the Ditch, whom he left there because he heard cer-
tain Outlawes in the Forrest, who would misuse the
Damozell whom the Knight of the Fairies had deli-
vered out of the Sacke, and cruelly did beate the
Squire *Geliastre*: both who he delivered after he had
slaine the Thieues. And finally how after his arrival in
Constantinople, hee spake to the Emperour, who
courteously pardoned him of the faulkes he had done
to hym, and made him promise to marry the Maiden
Dinamia, Sister to *Pharisor*, and of the lustinges hol-
den in Constantinople, wherein the Youth of the
Fairies, and his frende *Pharisor* got the prye, beyng
come thither in habit, disguised and vnknowen.

The next Chapter.

Wyle the Youth of the Fairies was setting
order in the Castle of Rocke *Alpine*, and in
loadyng the Gaintes dead Carrasses in holle
Litters and suche like, to be carried the next
morning to Constantinople, aswell therby to
rippe the Empetur of the greate feare whiche he had, lest
that

that his feast should bee by them disturbed and troubled, as
also to furnishe and disguise hym selfe to goe the next daye
unknowen to the Justes: the glittering Lampe of Phabns
had giuen place to the darkesome Mantell of the shadie
night. Whereupon hee was then perforce constrained to
stare and lie in the Rocke with the Giaunte Ergoferant, and
his good and valiaunt frende Pharisor, where he could not
long rest at his ease, for that his quietnes was interrupted,
by the late enkindled fire of his new spryng loue. And so ofte
as hee recorded the incomparable comelines of his Ladie,
he spake such increase of ardēt affection into hym, that had
it not bene for the hope whiche he had to win her grace and
faouour by his feates of Armes and valiancie, I feare that
(he p̄cessed with extreme passion,) would haue thē p̄sent-
ly dyed. But (because it commonly happeneth, that hope is
the nowrice and maintenaunce of life to them that are sick,
or in any wise ill disposed,) he yet comforted himself, & with
greate disquietnesse and difficultie passed that night, and
partly also was hee perplexed with some feare of his newe
Confederate Ergoferant, of whō notwithstanding any Lea-
gue or promise which he had made, he could not assure hym
self. And thus he stode on his owne gard, whiles his frende
Pharisor made ready his Furniture to goe to the Justes
on the morowe following. And whiles (I say) that these
thinges were in doyng, the day beganne to appeare cleare
and bright: whereupon the Giaunte Ergoferant, who know-
yng the vertue & puissance of the Knight which had van-
quished hym so smel and resemble more of deuine then hu-
mane nature, and supposing hym another Hercules, sent by
Jupiter into the world to purge and deliver it of monsters
and sauage creatures, hee studed and enforced hym selfe to
doe hym seruice agreeable: and therfore came to hym in
his Chamber, to see if he had ought els to commaund him,
offering willyngly to acciue it, yea with the hazarde and
losse of his owne life. Who geuing hym thankes therfore

P.ij. saied,

The Hystorie

said no[n], but onely that hee shoulde take heed to keepe the
faith and loyaltie whiche he had promised to hym.

Then takynge leauue of hym w[i]th humble reuerence and
amiable embracement, he went to finde Maister Rabalon,
who the night afore had so wel healed his wounde, þ he felte
no[n] more grief thereof. This being done, they cooke their
wate towarde Constantinople w[i]th the Prisoners, and
Chariotes laden w[i]th dead Carrasses as was afore apoin-
ted. But as they entered into the Forrest neere to Rocke
Alpine, they heard a grosse and lubberly voyce, whiche pel-
led and houled wonderously: and it seemed to the Care to
come frō out of the earth, wherfore the Giaunt Ergoferant,
and Maister Rabalon, who was well horsed, went thither-
ward, the other Prisoners holdyng on their wate still to-
wardes Constantinople. And when they were come where
they hearde the voyce, they sawe the Villaine whom the
Youtch of the Fairies had cast into the bottom of the Ditch
in the Sacke, wherein he caried the Damozell, who cosset
and tormentid hym selfe desperatlie therein, whiche the
Giaunt seeyng, said: who is he that hath caste thee there?
The villaine who knewe by his voyce, that it was one of
his Maisters, aunswere, it was the accursed Myselfe.
Then tarry there thy selfe still (said Maister Rabalon)
seeyng it pleased thy selfe so to doe. And so aunswere
the Villaine because that after the Youtch of the Fairies
had lefte Gelaste, and the Lady hid in the Bushe, the Vil-
laine cried so loude, that hee made the Forrest ringe with
his voyce, and kepte the Squire from hearing what wate
his Maisters Horse went, disturbing hym muche. Wher-
fore he went to hym againe, and bode hym hold his peace,
þ by his crying he shoulde never be deliuere, I praye thee
then at least wales (saide the Villaine) seeyng I must holde
my peace, that thou tell mee his name that cast mee here. It
was (saide Gelaste) my selfe: what saist thou thereto? The
Villaine thinking that hee said the Knights name was,

By selfe, gaue such aunswere to the Giant Ergoferant, as
is aforesated: who supposing hym so foolishhe, that for feare
he had/ hauing as he iudged lost the Damozel to be beaten
by slaine of his Brother Ferelaste, had put him selfe in the
Hooke, to hide hym, who lesce hym there to ende his dayes,
and departed thence: for that he hearde a trampling of ho-
ses & voyces of men who spake as though thei were angry,
and the voyce of a Damozell who cried pitifullly. Where-
fore going thither, he sawe fistene or sycene Outlawes, ar-
med with great Staues and Clubbes bound with Yron at
both endes a foote long, sharpe and pearcing, who with
hugge blowes did beate a poore young Squire, & soure of
them haled and drewe a faire young Damozell by the Ar-
mes, and heare of the head moche dispieously. But as soone
as they sawe the Giaunc come towardes theim, they leste
their piale, and flayng this waike and that waike, they triued
to escape and sau eche one his owne life.

But all could not doe so well; for sixe of theim whom the
Giaunce could catche, remauned deade on the Grasse there
for gage: then retournyng where he had lefte the Damo-
zell, he was muche ameruested that he founde her not. Then
seekyng here and there for her on all sides, at last he found
her hidde with the Squire Gelaste, behinde a little bulbe,
so cloase & so nere the one the other, that thei seemed but one
person. Then alighcyng from his Horse, hee tooke her by
the hande, and the Squire also, who thinkyng theim selues
falue out of a lengerynge Feuer, into a sodaine sweat, trem-
bles with suchfeare, that thei could skarce stande on their
feete before the Giaunce: who to comfort theim, spake moche
courteouslie, and prateru theim to tell hym, whom, or from
whence thei were: chieflie the Squire: for the Damozell
he knewe well to bee her, whom his brother Ferelaste had
commaunded the villaine Franquetrippe to goe castle into
the ditch, who somwhat emboldened, aunswered hym that
he belonged to a yonge Knight, named the Yonche of the

The Hystorie

Fairies, who as he thought was by that tyme prisoner to the Giaunte Ferclasse: humblie prayng hym that he would not hurte hym, until he knewe whether he were deade, or aliue. The Giaunte after hauyng amably comptred unto him al that had passid and haue done, in the Battell betwixt them, alured hym of the health and victorie of his Maister, and that he shoude haue hym safe and sounde at Rocke Alpme. Whereat the Squire was so gladd, as if the whole Monarchie of Europe had fallen to his share. And the Giaunte hauing left hym to goe to Constantynople, they deparred, the one with the Damozell, that is to wit, the Squire to goe bide his Maister. And the other whiche was Ergofrant, to goe to Constantynople, where hee was not so soone arriued, but he founde Maister Rabalon: who in the Forest he left pursuing the Outlawes, who told to the Emperour incentinely listening vnto hym, & vnto his Barons, in the great Hall of þ Pallace, beynge all armed fro head to foote, how the YOUTH of the Fairies, a young Knight, to whom he had giuen his Knighthode not long agoe, had by his force and valiauncie vanquisched the Gardes of Rocke Alpme: parte of whom he had thither brought for better assurance of the same: whose dead Carkasses with the twoo Giances Ferclasse and Androfor were come in Chariotes, and also how he had brought the prisoners which they had perforce long tyme helde, to doe therewith at his pleasure: The other parte remainyng with hym aliue at Rocke Alpme: and how he had ouercome and brought to his subdiction the Giant Ergofrant, who (whille this other was thus tellyng his tale) entered into the Hall, and castynge his Battle Are doun in the place, and then bulacing his Helmet whiche he layed doun at his fete, he addredded his speache to the Emperour on this wise.

" Mighcie Emperour, I assure my selfe, that if you haue
 " regarde to the infinite damages and displeasures, which I
 " & my brethren haue daily doen vnto you, I merite to be pu-
 nished

nished more greuously & worse then euer yet was any. But puttynge my confidence in your courtesie, & bountie abou-
dant, I haue presumed (accordyng to promise) to presente
my selfe personally before your Imperiall Maestie, beyng
so enioyned to doe, by the faire and gentle Youthe of the
Fairies, the floder (alough as yet yong and tender) of
all the Knighees that nowe liue, that you may doe and di-
spole with mee at your owne good will and pleasure. Bee-
seeching you in his name, and for the great good wil which
he beareth you, to graunt mee mercie and pardon of all the
faultes whiche I haue euer committed against you: whiche
with true repenteance, and doowing to you my seruice hence-
forwarde (as he hath expellee comauanded) I humbly
require and obesse. The Emperour who in benignicie and
clemencie was second to none in the wo尔de, as well for the
good newes brought hym, as for the loue of the Youthe,
whom he deined sent from heauen, to helpe his calamite
concernyng the Giaunes, paruoned hym with good harre,
deyng ioyfull of so good spytine & knawing further this
Giaune by his looks and countenaunce (contrarie to the
kind of such) to be very mecke and gentle: and also hauyng
heard saie that chidugh his clementie, and courteous na-
ture in his brothers life, hee had released and let goe many
prisoners, if at any tyme oþer chanced to be abson; Where-
fore he pitied hym to vouchesafe to carrie in his seruice, for
whiche hee wold wel remponce hym, whereto the Gi-
aunt (humbly thankyng hym) aunswereþ that euer whiles
life lasted hym he wold not faille nor bee faithlesse to hym.
Wherat the Emperour exceeding ioyous, saied that hee
(would marry hym to his brede Dianis, sister to Tharifer,
whiche offer (because shee Dianis was myrelous faire,
& and grattous) he willingly ardeined, & therupon he made
them to promise the one to the other matche of mariage:
which done, the Emperour and all his Barons and Kigh-
les arose, and went to see the dede Knights and Giaunes
liyng

The Hystorie.

lying vpon the Chariotes without: whereat they muche
meruened, how one onely person could by his valiauncie,
without other aide at all, put to death and dispatch so many
puissant Personages, who in their life had troubled whole
Armies: and they also maruiled at the myghtie blowes
and woundes whiche they had. For some were riuen doun
to the Belly: other some quite clouen with one blowe of the
Sword: and others (as the Giaunt Ferclaste, had their Ar-
mes and Legges cut of: and they saide one to another, that
at no tyme they had seen men slaine, but never did they, ne
never shold they see men so mangled and martyred as these
were. Whereupon they largely praised the Youthe of the
Fairies for his valoure: saipng: that if he continued as he
had begonne, hee woulde bee the beste Knight that euer the
world fostered or had brought foorth.

This dooen, the Emperour commannded to hange all
those deade bodies in a Woodde, nat farre distaunce from
the Citie, whiche was doen incontinente. Then he caused
the best Painter in al his Empire to come unto him, and to
depaint þ Hystory (as a matter worthy of aye lasting rem-
braunce) in the greate Hall of his Pallacie, with the moste
riche and costlie splendizant coullers that could bee found.
And for the greate desire he had to see the Youth, he dispat-
ched thre or fower knyghtes, to goe search he hym spedilte
at Rocke Alpine: whiche doen he commences che Hastynges
and Tourneys, without further feare, whereat were pre-
sent vpon þ kassoldes, sett by for that intent, the Empresse,
the Princes Porphyrie, and the Ladie Hardorne, with the
sage Marcella, and the gentle Amadree, with many mo La-
dies and Damozelles, right richly attired & adornd with
chaines of gold, gounes of Cieluet of all coullers, clothe of
Golde and Siluer, and other Jewellies: whereof they had
leste none that daye behinde in their Chambers, whiche
micht helpe to enhaunce their beauties, or perfectnesse in
any pointe: whiche standyng againste the shimpng Sunne,
shewed

shewed as thei had bene thinges diuine rather thē humain: which thing gaue such hartenyng, & encouragement to the knightes that should Juste, that thei takyng lofie stomakes unto them, erthe one seemed to bee farre more valiaunte, then in prooffe hee was: those whiche were preste and ren- ged for the Justes, brake and strained theim selues with suche force on the course, that at the dashyng and stroke of their Launces, whiche in shiuers flew up into the ayre, some of them beyng caste out of the Saddles, fell doune to the grounde: the restre more expert and valiaunte, without breache of stasse, attchiued their course gallauntlie. Whiche thyng a certaine yong knight secyng, who seemed in countenaunce and shewe, to bee of greate vertue and valiauncie, who that same Mornynge was come to assisse at the Justes, aduaunced hymself, & came so fiercely with his Speare to wards one of them, which had not bene dihorseyd, & who seemed to him the stoutest Juster of all, called *Anthenor*, & who had caste adoune the gentle knight *Florenge*, and stroke hym so roughly vpon the shielde, that at the first blowe the launce passed throughe his body, more thē a parde in length: whereat the Emperour was muche agreeued, and likewise all his Barons and Knights (for nexte his nephewe *Pharisor* he was the valiauntest, and wilest of all his Empire) and specially *Gyllant of Carrage*, who was his great frende and compaignon: who to reuenge his death, came towar- des hym, but he received hym so bruelie, that after his Launce was broken, he tooke suche a leape to the grounde, that all the beholders thought he had broken his necke. The yong Knight continuing his course, came against an other baske fellowe, and he bled hym so as he did the other, and without breache of Speare, he ouerthrew, and fliwe that day more then fiftie of the fonest and ioyliest knightes: whereat those whiche sauwe hym, were muche amerueiled, for he canne not against any, whom he bare noe from his horse to the grounde, and made theim mozeover there to

The Hystorie

confesse, that his Lady was more faire then their's, whereof the good Giant Ergoferant being aduised, disdaining much that he should triumph so long, purposed to trie one blowe for the loue of his newe Mistresse, and came all armed, and mounted vpon a lustie Shredre, weenyng by his onely presence to astonishe hym, and to make hym flee incontinent. But it chaunced cleane contrary. For the young knyght hauyng spied hym, cam with Speare in restle towardes hym, and little fearyng hym, receiuird the blow brauely vpon his shielde, which was so huge and sharpe, that peareyng quicke through, it passed vnder his arme an elle or more, whiche breyng recovered, hee finished his course: the Giauntes blowe (though strong and weightie) not remouyng hym ane whit. Whereat he beeyng muche despiced and angred, tooke his greate Battle Axe, and with muche furie came agaynst hym (who toyly receiuird hym with suche force, that if he had not by his agilitie and nimblenesse, eschewed the weightie blowes of the Giaunce, he had not so long stode against hym as he did. But sleyng some while the Giauntes furious blowes, some while receiyng those whiche he thought lesse daungerous vpon his shielde, so to giue hym better occasion of plaie, by rapping hym now on his shield, & now on his Helme, he bares himself so valiantly that the battele endured an whole hower: the Giauntes (who of his valiautie wist not what to judge, were so transported with maruell) not perceiuyng any aduantage either of the one partie or of the other, and so wery were they of the Combate, that to take breach they retired backe asunder, a Roodes lengeth, the better to begin their nexte encounterie. But whē they had rested in quiet about a quarter of an hower, they would haue begonne again, when behold there arived twoo Knights all covered with the skinnes of wildr beastes, doun to their horses hooches, so hideous to beholde, as euer was Monstrous chace. Ergoferant: who hauyng long tyme bene hid behinde the peasse of che people,

who

who busily behelde the Combate of the Giaunte, and the
brave bnoothe Knight, to see the ende and issue thereof,
were wearied to stande so longe idle without playnge
some parte of the Tragedie: wherefore leapping into the
fielde (not without greate astonishment to the Assistaunce,
chichly to the Ladies, who deemyng them Diuels or Hags
of Hell so disguised) cast forth such a crie, that amazedly
descending from the Skafoldes where they sate, they fled
with all speede possible towardes the coppes and Turrets
of the Wallace, to see with more suerty the issue of the Com-
bate, and to contemplate these newcome knyghtes more fur-
ther of. But the Empresse nor her daughter, neither any of
their Damozelles moued one whit, beynge certayned by a
Squire disguised with a Visarde and a long white Beard,
that these were two of their knyghtes, who of purpose were
come to breake of the Combate betwixt the Giaunte and
the valiaunt young knyght. Who having certayned the Em-
presse hereof, roade speedely to þ Combatters, who by this
tyme had begonne to backe and hewe the one the other, and
presentyng to eche of them a Lance, saied these woddes.
Moryþ knyghte I pray you, that taking a litle Truce,
you will heare what I say. The sauage knyghtes my Da-
thers enamoured and desirous of the great prowesse which
they see to bee in you, desire you of courtesie, that geuyng
some releasement to your Combate, it will please you, to
take eche of you one of these Lances, and let them shewe
their force by the breaking of one onelie brasse against
your persones: assuring you that they bee men and mortall
creatures, but yet right strong and valiaunt knyghtes, and
not as some suppose, Spynces, or walking Ghostes, either
Castor or Pollux so disguised. Werelie for one blowe, saied
the yong knyght, ther shall not be refusid on my side, no, not
for two or thre, if they wil so many: but it shall be with this
on the Grounde (saied hee) whiche I will use in this case,
for in myne opinion it is stronger then thyne. And as hee

The Hystorie

would have descended to take it vp, whiles the Giaunt sea-
led vpon the big gest of the others, the Squire tooke it vp
lightlie, not permitting hym to stoupe downe: and gaue it
into his haunde, whiche was the same wjerwch he had slaine
and ouerthowen so many knyghtes: and as soone as he had
it, he and the Giaunt came to gether, saying, what know we
whether they be deuilles or no, according to their apparell,
and streightwaies they sawe them come with suche force a-
gainst them (in their Speares in Rest) þe greater wilde
man made the Earth tremble vnder hym, who hit the poure
knight on the Shielde with suche force, that hee bursle his
Speare without stirring from the Garde: althoough the o-
ther had pearced his Shielde in diuers places: wherein his
Launce abidynge fastened, hee fell buygely to take his mea-
sure on the grounde: whereat al the people that sawe it, said,
that the grete deuill had cast the litle deuill adowne. And
on the other parte, the meeting togither of the Giaunte,
and the other sauage manne was suche that breaking their
staues the one upon the other with oute failynge, ther brauely
performed their courses: and had begunne againe to Juste,
þe sauage manne seyng his fellowe with the Launce in
hand, which he had drawnen fro his Shielde, to flike þe wind
fro out of the field, had not paced after hym with great hast,
& the disguised Squire also, who had brought the Speare-
staues in such sorte, that some ther were out of sight. So be-
yng passed the Toun, ther entred into a Wood so thicke
and sare, that none could ascer that sette eye on them.
Wherof the yong uncooche Knight was so abashed (who
thought to haue had the price of the Justes) that he seemed
to goe beside hym self, and mountynge on Hoole, tookes
Launce and rode after them, to bee avenged of his fall,
leauyng the Emperour and all the rest so amazned, that
ther knewe not what to thinke of this aduenture, if it were
not that the yonge Knyght, who was caste downe, were not
the Yonthe of the Faries: considering the couraige that

in hym consisted, and that the other were some Magiciens, who had made hym loose his glorie and honour, whiche hee had gained in the Justes, had it not beeene for this: but they were farre out of their compte, and so it fell out that by the common consente of the Judges, the prize was allotted to the greater of the wilde men, who had caried awaies the Launce.

The Emperour knewe who the wilde menne were, who then wannte the prise of the Iustynges: the one of which (that is to witte) he that had ouerth owen the yong vñknownen Knight: so spurred his Horse all the long daie, that beeynge gone astray from his mate, whom he left in the Forest, he arived in the euening neare to a Castell, whiche stooode vpon a plaine: where heareyng the sounde of a Clarion, and the melodious voice of a Ladie, hee staied and was lodged there for that night, wherc he had muche amorous talke with the louyng Ladic, wanlyng a Louer.

The.xiiij.Chapster.



OU haue hearde heretofore, how the good Giaunce Ergoferant deliuered the Squire Gelaste, and the Damozell, daughter to Floranges, whom the outlaws would haue rauished, who shoulde after, as thei went toward Rock Apine, mette with ceane Sauage Knyghtes, of whom, one hauyng his Helmett vñaced was knownen to the Squire: who by his comnaundement disguised hym self, and wente on message to the Ladies, as you haue heard a soire tolde, and to prentice the Launces to the knyghtes to Juste with all, and so went with theim. Now this Damozell (after that eche one was retired) so as thei were at the

The Hystorie

Table, and diuised of that whiche had passed at the Tustes, the Emperour beeynge determined, to sende after the Savage menne, to knowe what they were) entered into the Hall (whereof her gentle Father Floranges was moche ioy-
ous) and with a merie countenaunce and pleasure to ges
recompted to alle the compaignie, that one of the Savage
knighthes, that is to witte, he which conquered the Launce
from the younge knyght unknowen, was the Youthe of the
Falries, and the other was the good knyght Pharisor, who
were in such habite come to Tuste, and not to be knownen.
The whiche Youth required the Emperour by her, that he
would holde hym excused, in that after the Tustes he so de-
parted, and was absent from his Courte, because so greate
and urgencie affaires pressed hym therunto. But assone as
he had dispatched his busynesse, he would not faille to come,
and accomplithe his promise made, & to remaine alene da-
yes in his seruice. Whereat the Emperour and the reste
were muche amarueiled, and scarce wold haue beleued it,
had it not been for the good Giaunte Ergoferam, who saied,
that he dēmid therof no lesse: in that the night afore, he had
marked Pharisor to patche, & lowe together a greate many
of beastes skinnes, as Beares, wilde Bozes, Lions, & such
like: and therfore it might well be, that they came so appa-
relled: which thing commyng to the eares of the Princesse
Porphyria, who had enquired it aforehande of the Damozel
who on the Youthes part (as he had commannded her) had
dooen to her commendations, I leauue you to thinke whe-
ther she were glad or sorie: for these two conterarities gaue
such assafutes, & so troubled her hart, that she knewe not on
what syde to turne her, neither could tell whether she shold
reioyce: in that loue (past al hope) had so much fauoured her
as to make her settle her affection & mynde, vpon Knyghte,
who euen in the beginnyng of his deedes, made all them so
astonished, that heard speake of hym: in so much that never
having heard the like, they deemed, and the Painters wold
firmelie

firmelie haue beleued, if ther haue seen or heard of the like, that he was either Mars or Bellona, who had leste Heauen, and come doun, by his woxthie deedes to putte people in admiration: O whether she ought to bee so rowfull and sadde, in beeyng depryued of the presence of the thyng, that in this wold shee esteemed moste deare. Restyng in doubt whether his Loue, was fained or no. In this gladsome and soorrowfull perplexite consisted she, pondering still how she might beste knowe the truthe of a thyng so doubtfull.

And on the other parte, the Youthe (in traualyng and endeououring himself by his valiancy & promesse, to acquire and get of her þ which she would with all her hart, honestly assigne unto him, to wit, her grace, good will, & fauour) was secretly departed, without discoueryng hym self, to the mynde that the Emperour, and the reste of the Knights through their importunauncie, shold not daie noz allure hym to remayne so neere that fire, whiche still flamed more and more, not able by obliuion to quenche the heate thereof, so sore kindeled by phansie in the fornace of his mynde: beeyng thereby so distressed, that (as it were furious and halfe in a rage) after his sodaine departure from the Justes, he so pricked forwarde (without thinkyng of ought els) all daie vpon his good Horse Lisocephall, that his frende Pharisor, neither his Quire, not able to accompaaigne hym, in bee-
yng not so well Horsed, were constrained through the wea-
rinesse and feblenesse of their Horses, to remayne in the mid-
wai, beeyng in a rough and chicke Forrest, where ther of
force did then take their rest, the night commyng vpon
them. And this Forrest was fiftene miles from Constanti-
nople, & at the endz thereof, which stretched in length moze
then twentie miles, where stooð a verie faire and pleasant
Castle, in the middess of a plaine: neere to the whiche the
Youthe of the Fairies arived late in the Euenyng, and
would also haue passed it, but that he heard within, a Trium-
pette, whiche sounded right melodiouslie, whiche caused

him

The Hystorie

hym to staine vpon the plaine, ouer against the Castell wall,
to heare and conceiue the pleasaunte notes of the solemne
Clarion: but when he had so staid a while there, (his eares
beyng rauished with the sweete soundyng Instrumente, he
heard a Damozell (the Trumpette ceasyng) wha syngyng
moste melodiouslie, seemed to aunswere it in this sorte.



*Hath more excessiue payne
Then that whiche my poore hearte
Doth daie by daie sustaine,
Of anguishe, woe and smart?
Can one endure or pacientlie abyde
But death must soone his threede of life decide.

Nor of what fire what flame
Is never seen to cease,
But that whiche hath a game
To make my woes encrease.
And boyles and burnes within my balefull hearte,
With languishing and still tormentyng smart.*

*That Thiese Prometheus
Althoung a greedie grype,
Fast chainde on Caucasus
His fleshe did reare and byte.*

*And stillthus painde, was yet more blest then I
Who in worse woes do wallowe still and crie.*

*For his ill had recure
And fortune framde this hap,
That Hercules by power
Did his annoyes unwarp.*

*And that the gredy grype by him once slaine
Prometheus was releaseyd from further paine.*

Bne

But as for mee I feare
 My woes will nere take ende,
 And that my care to cleare
 The fates do nere pretende.
 Till that the course of fuckleſſe life doe passe
 And I retourne forworne to that I was.

For Atrops homycde
 That playes a Butchers part,
 Must be the ſole Alcyde
 That well may with her Dart,
 In mee this grype of loue to Mortifie,
 Since(els but death) I ſee no remedie.

When ſhee had attchifed this lamentable Songe with
 note and boyce, moft pitifulle, ſhe retyred from the top of a
 Turret, whiche was at the one corner of the Castle, moft
 faire and pleasanſe to beholde: and then was no more heard,
 either boyce or Clarion. Wherefore the Douch was exere-
 dyng ſoþy: for in her boyce, and ſound of the Inſtrumente
 he tooke ſo greate pleasure, that ſeeing hym ſelue deprivid
 thereof, a ſadneſſe equall in contrarietie to all his former
 ſoye dechaunced hym. But as wretched and unforunatue
 persons haue naturally a custome to comforte them ſelues
 in others harmes ſemblable to theirs, ſo this Damozel fee-
 ming to him to be tuckt to the ſame diſease that hee was,
 he was therby ſomewhat reniued: and determined (takynge
 compaſſion of the Damozell) to goe to the Castle, and if it
 were poſſible, to recomfort her. But conſideryng well that
 ſuche as are of perfect eyefight muſte leade the blinde, and
 the free from affliction, likewiſe comfort the deſolate, hee
 channged his opinion. In fine, conſideryng that hee at is
 blind in his doynges, leaueth not yet of, to comfort oþers
 in their affaires, though nere ſo like: As thole ſickē phisi-
 cions, who can giue to their Patientes better counſell then
 R.J. they

The Hystorie

they can take for them selnes: In like sorte doe Aduocates
in other mens causes, although moste ignorant in their
owne proper affaires: hee wholy resolued with hym selfe,
(seeyng also that as well he as his Ho:se had neede of har-
bourough) to go to þ Castle, to see if they wuld lode hym
for that night. And being approuched nere thereto, he knoc-
ked mightely at the Gate: whereat there came a Page
well appointed. Who was in a little Gallery ouer the Pa-
tall, and puttynge his head out at a Windowe, and seeyng
the Knight in suche araye hee had so greate feare of hym,
that hee ranne out of the Gallerie through another which
stretched along the walles of the Castle even to the Cham-
ber where the Lady made her residence. Whether he be-
yng come in post haste hid hym selfe, tremblingly vnder a
Bed. Wherof the Dame beyng aduertised, demanded of
him what he meant. Wherto he with greate solemnies aun-
swered. Alas Madame, we are all dead, so there is a great
and monstros Devill at the Gate, who would gladly en-
ter and come in, whiche if he doe, wee are all but dead. Spe
fonde coward (said the Ladye) doe Deuilles now abandon
Hell to come hither? And makyngh him to departe whiche
hee was hid, she sent him to call another. So ure out of the
next chamber, whom she commaunded to go see whiche was
that knocked at the Gate: whereto he obied, But having
once seen the Knight, (no lesse affrighted then the Page) he
came and cauld to the Ladie the like Tale: whereupon shee
called a Knight, who somewhat more bold then the other,
spake to þ Pouch, who because he had seen the other asaled
of his Skinnes, put them of, and with his Helmet unlaced,
goode vncouered, whiche more encouraged the Knight to
speake, and to aske what he lacked. I would (said he) enter
in, if so it please the Lady to lode mee for this tyme. Tary
thera a little (saied the Knight) to ease your selfe & take the
aire, while I goe to see what she will therein doe: and being
departed from hym, at laste he came to open hym the doore,
which

of Gerileon. fol. 66.

which through (with his Hōrse) he entered into a large and spatiouse Court where he alighted: And the Knight hauing deliuered his Hōrse to the Hōrsekeeper to cary to the Stable, much maruellynge at the growth and goodlinesse of the same, and no lesse at his Maister, ledde hym into the Ladies Chamber, who receiued hym mooste honourably. And sdyng Supper ready, with good appetite he tooke his refegion order: duryng whiche, she demaunded whence he was, and also what his name was. Whereto he aunswereſ, that he was boorne in the Realme of Greate Britaine: And to set the Lady deeper in matters of loue, he said he could cal hym ſelfe by none other name but Beaucies Slave. At whiche word the Ladie fetched a grecuous sigh: whiche the Youth well notyng, and ſeeing the waie nowe open to attaine to his intended purpose (whiche was to knowe the caufe why ſhe chaunted ſo dolorous a Song as ſhe did in his hearyng) hee asked why ſhe ſighed ſoe. Ha courteous Knight ſaid ſhe) it is not without caufe, as well you mee deeme: for by your name you haue reopened all my Woundes, b̄inging mee in memorie and minde of hym, whiche by imitacpong you, I may to my ſelfe vſurpe. For ſaying you ſaiſ that you are Beaucies Slave: it can not be, but that in ſeeing ſome infirme ſemblance, you haue dyonne of the ſame Licour, that I moſt vnhappely haue ſupped vp, whiche maketh mee to be in equality of il eafe with you, who as I iudge by your gesture and countenaunce (if I be not to much therby deſcived) are neither leſſe, nor (as well it may not be) greater then mine. I may name my ſelfe from hence foaward rightly, (the ſame beyng corespondent to my miſerable conditi- on as well as yours) the Slave of Loue, for ſo hath he tied: ſettered me vnder the Daake of his ſervitude (as none li- uing being able to ſurpaſſe me) I will not hope of my ſelfe, beyng in diſperre (from which I beleue you are, exēmpte), euer to franchise my ſelfe from his ſervitude: whereto ſeing neither waie nor Pache whiche may conduct and leade mee

R.ij.

out

The Hyfstorie

out of this Labyrinth of fayching thoughtes of Loue: in
depth whereof I am plunged and dwined. I doubt not
Lady (saied the Youtch) but that it is possible that you haue
some greate feeling in your selfe, of the ardent fire whiche
Cupide comonly kindleth: but to say þt it approacheth (which
GDD so bid) to the vehemencie of that, whiche I feele to
consume me, I can not bee thereof perswaded: seeing that
(as you faigne youres) it is my Malady that is incurable,
and not that whiche affliseth you, as far as I can perceve.
For wemens amorous concytes are resembled to þt biting
of the venomous Scorpion, whiche hath remeþ againe of
the woundmaker. Wherfore I conclude of your disease, be-
ing unequall in painefulnes to mine, that this name which
you seek to vsurpe, is not so fitting or convenient to you,
as mine is to me: being perhaunce contrary to that which
you haue declared, of having any power to reape redresse of
þm, who hath sownen your hōse seedes of sorowe: but I am
not so. Wrothy Knight & my deere frende, replied the La-
dy) I confesse in veritie, that thosse tale woordes þt speake
touching your allegimēte, þt an amorous influence may be
queched by hym þt kindled it, is a truthe. But also I say that
whiche is fatally in men beeynge of the same nature, as you
saied at þt beginning, that is: that my malady is unmatcha-
ble to youres, I ought not to name my selfe by a name (as
I haue doone to imitate youres) nor groundyng onghe on
cruelty. For why may I soone accaine that remedie whereso-
þt þt speake, then you? I thinke it is muche moe unpossible.
of þt that (saied the Youtch) that Ladies, beeynge surprised
þtch the loue of some Knight, by their onely countena-
nces and becketes, whiche they well knowe howe to concerne
(when they would come to the accomplishmer of their Lo-
ues) better then men, they attaine more and obtaine sooner
the fullfilling of their deute then men beeynge lesse carefull
of their Chancie, whiche aboue all thinges they ought to
garde and regarde, wherof, when, and at what tyme loue
sozeth

forseth to vse liberalitie so prodigallie to allay their amorous Passions , they are sooner succoured then men : who (like as I haue done) hauing hoyled the saile of their lynes, into a place too haughtie and rebellious, for feare of being too shrewdely shent and checked , not daryng to manifeſte their malady , are constrained to consume them ſelues in the Smoke of ſlowe and languifhyng fire. Whereas these (men beyng farre more pitfull and courteous in this caſe then they) at the leaſt ſhew or twinklyng of the eye receiuē redyeſſe of their dolefult.

Sir knight) replied againe the Ladie , if I would here againe alledge the force of shame, whiche is , or at leaſtwile ought rather to bee in women then in menne, to haue moxe efficacie, in lettynge her from obtaynyng that whiche ſhe defireth, then the crueltie of Ladies, whiche in vaine you haue brought in question, to make for your ſelf in this diſputacion, I allare you , that of me you ſhall not gette the upper hande. But ſeeþg perhaunce you haue deſire to goe take your reſte, and that diſpuryng hereon woulde bee to tedious I will conſouine you, and make you confeſſe, my maladie to bee uincitable, and therfore equall, or farre worse then yours. By an occaſion whiche I haue moxe apertenaunte and diſtreſſe: the whiche is euen ſo as I will recite to you, whereby you maie moxe clearely understande my ſore diſtreſſe. Wherefore knowe you, that I was daughter to the Duke of Chalcyde, wha in his ſecond Muptialles, hauyng maried a Damozell of noble houſe, called Marcella, he retred unto þ Emperor's court, where a yere agoe he was vaine by the cursed Glaunce Ferclaste, ſcauyng me here for the gouernelle of this Cattell, whiche preſently is in my poſt, tellian through his deceaſte; and to the ende I might haue no occaſion of fauorne he left me, for garde and compaинe ſuche Knightes, as he had greaſte confidence in: one of whom is hee, who opened you euē now the gate, who is a god & a loyall Knight. But as no bodie is without a ſha-

The Hystorie

out of this Labyrinth of fayching thoughtes of Loue: in
depth whereof I am plunged and downed. I doubt not
Lady (saide the Youth) but that it is possible that you haue
som: greate feeling in your selfe, of the ardent fire whiche
Cupide commonly kindleth: but to say þt approacheth (whiche
GOD for bid) to the vehementie of that, whiche I feele to
consume me, I can not bee thereof perswaded: seeing that
(as youaigne youres) it is my Malady that is incurable,
and not that whiche affilteh you, as far as I can perceue.
For wemens amorous conceites are resembled to þt biting
of the venomous Scorpion, whiche hath remedy againe of
the woundmaker. Wherefore I conclude of your disease, be-
ing unequall in painefulnes to mine, that this name whiche
you seeke to vsurpe, is not so fitcyng or convenient to you,
as mine is to me: being perhaunce contrary to that which
you haue declared, of having any power to reape redresse of
him, who hath sownen your hose seedes of loue: but I am
not so. Worshy Knight & my deere frende/ replied the La-
dy/ I confesse in verite, that thosse tales woordes ye spake
touching your allegemente, þt an amorous influence may be
queched by hym þt handled it, is a truthe. But also I say that
whiche is fatally in men beeynge of the same nature, as you
saide at þt beginning, that is: that my malady is unmatcha-
ble to youres, I ought not to name my selfe by a name/ as
I haue doone to imitate youres) nor groundyng onghe on
erue. For why may I sooner attaine that remedie where-
þt of þt speake, then you: sithens it is muche more vnypossible.
For that (saide the Youth) that Ladies, beeynge surpised
with the loue of some Knight, by their onely counteraun-
ces and beckes, whiche they well knowe howe to conculue
(when they would come to the accomplishing of their Lo-
ues) better then men, ther attriue more and obiate sooner
the fullfilling of their desire, then men beeynge less carefull
of their Chastite, whiche aboue all thinges they ought to
garde and regarde, whereof, when, and at what tyme loue
forceth

forceth to vse liberalitie so prodigallie to allay their amorous Passions , they are sooner succoured then men : who (like as I haue done) hauing hoyled the saile of their lynes, into a place too haughtie and rebellious, for feare of being too shewdely shent and checked , not daryng to manifesse their malady , are constrained to consume them selues in the Smoke of stowe and languishyng fire. Whereas these (men beyng farre more pitifull and courteous in this case then they) at the least shew or twinklyng of the eye receiuē redresse of their dolour.

Sir knight) reysted againe the Ladie , if I would here againe alledge the force of shame, whiche is , oþ at leastwise ought rather to bee in women then in menne, to haue more efficacie, in deterring her from obtaynyng that whiche she desireth, then the crueltie of Ladies, whiche in vain you haue brought in question, to make so; your self in this disputacion, I assurē you , that of me you shall not gette the upper hande. But seeing perhaunce you haue desire to goe take your rest, and that dispuyyng hereon woulde bee to tedious I will confounde you , and make you confessē, my maladie to bee vncurable , and therfore equall, oþ farre worse then yours . By an occasion whiche I haue more apertenaunte and bytise : the whiche is even so as I will recite to you, whereby you maie more clearely vnderstande my sore distresse. Wherfore knowe you , that I was daughter to the Duke of Chalcyde, who in his second Nuptialles, hauyng married Damezell of noble house, called *Marcella*, he returned unto y^e Emperours court, where a yere agoe he was slaine by the cursed Giaunce Ferclaste, scayng me here for the gouernelle of his Cattle, whiche plenlī is in my possestion throught his deceas ; and to the ende I might haue no occasion of savouesse he lefte me, so I gaide a companie suche Knightes, as he had greatesse confidence in: one of whom is hee, who opened you euē now the gate, who is a good & a loyall Knight. But as no boodie is without a shadewe,

The Hystorie

“dowe, so fewe menne are founde without þynne, or presse of
“some imperfection, whiche accustomable is naturall in thē.
“For he hath this vice in hym, that if he see any thyng which
“liketh hym, or is agreeable to his phausie, he will woake so
“by some sleight (if otherwise he can not) that he will haue
“it. The other whom I dæmed of lesse disceipte and treason,
“was farre moze malicious. For incontinentlie after the de-
“parture of my said Fader, he shewed himself to be amorous
“of me, and by his fyled speache and messages, with all other
“meanes possible (feigned hymself so distressed, that he could
“not at any tyme rest, without disturbing me) to haue of me
“the accomplishmente of his desires : whiche caused mee,
“that seyng his disloyaltie, I Cooke it so sore against harte,
“that after hauyng checked, and chastized hym, I kepee hym
“so shorte, that in despite of this my refusall, he chaunged his
“late loue into dire desire of vengeance, & that so vehement-
“ly that there was no treason so greate, whiche he leste vnat-
“tempted, to bryng me to his purpose, and filthie practise.
“But not syndyng the successe of accomplishmente in his en-
“terprise, beholde a soraine chaunce, which to mine ill lucke
“herein happened, and on a soraine to hym was fauourable.

“For one daie as he walked in the Forrest hereby, busied
“in his deceiueable iuentionis, he by chaunce encounred a
“Pilgrime, whō without thinking thereof (as I haue since
“understoode) he asked whēce he was, who tolde him that he
“was of the Realme of Persia : But for that in his tyme, he
“had been a greate Magicien, and by his Nicromancie had
“committid many execrable deedes and woakes, for which
“to dooe penaunce, he had been to see the holie Sepulchre of
“our Loide and Redeemer Jesus Christe : the Knight as-
“ked hym further, what aduenture had sozced hym to cra-
“uaile so farre into these quarters ? Thereto againe he an-
“swered, that he durst not goe into his owne Countrie of
“Persia to dwell, for that the greate Sophie of Persia cal-
“led Martinell, would woake his death, because he once daſ-

ted, to haue made by his arte a Cuppe of suche vertue, that ,
who so euer dranke therein (of what drinke so euer) thei ,
should be so taken with the loue of hym or her, whiche gaue ,
it theim, that maugre theim selues, thei shold bee constrai- ,
ned to loue paste ali measure: whiche cuppe he neuer wold ,
giue to the Sophie, therewith to make hym beloued of the ,
Princesse Porphyrie, daughter to the Emperour of Consta- ,
tinople, of whom he was so amorous, that hauyng now so- ,
wer or ffe tyme demaunded her for wife, the Emperour ,
was constrained to accorde, so that shee would loue him and ,
consent to chose him for housebande, and that he wold Ba- ,
ptize hym self, and holde the Christians Lawe, whiche for ,
his parte he hath doen. But he was so soule and so ill fauon- ,
red, that althoough hee was esteemed one of the beste knigh- ,
tes of the worlde, yet he hated hym mortallie: wherefore he ,
would haue vsed my Cuppe (saied the Pilgrime) but I ,
choose rather to abandon the Countrie, and to passe the ,
reste of myne aged daies, in some vncouth coaste, then to ha- ,
ve occasion of so greate wickednesse, as this my cuppe might ,
wooke to all Chixtendome, as well I haue so seen by my ,
Arte. My Knight hauyng vnderlanded so muche of the ,
Pilgrime, was well apayed of so good an encounter. And ,
after as kyng hym whether he yet had the Cuppe, the Pil- ,
grime shewyng ic, he slewe hym: and takynge his Cuppe, ,
rame towardes me, & shewing me faire semblaunce, serued ,
me w the same, by meanes of a Squire, who acceded on the ,
Table, beyng ful of wine, made pestiferous by vertue of the ,
vessell: whiche bath brought to passe, that euer since I haue ,
been enuenomed by this cruell and murderous drinke. Ha- ,
uing so saied & concluded, (she shadynge a nuber of brishe ,
teares) I looke & she for none other deliuery but Deach, & ,
the small ende of my daies, which me thinkes too long flac- ,
keth, and staieth his paces, from releasynge me of this great ,
seruitude. And now see sir knight, how not without cause I ,
chaunted that song whiche you overheard, and oþdinarelie ,
doe .

The Hystorie

“ doe vse it at the same hower . For that,in tellyng and com-
“ plainyng my self so shilly of mine aduerse Fortune, I feele
“ greate ease and solace. And having heard your name, it see-
“ med me good to usurpe the same , whiche newlie I haue at-
“ tributed to my self. But what : (said the Yowche) is there
“ not meanes to appaise your maladie , by the enioying of
“ hym, on whom you are so amozous : Alas no (said the La-
“ die) for the wiche (to take the more reuenge of me) slewe
“ The Pilgrime to withstande my purpose, and so fledde, since
“ When I never could haue woerde of hym, that I might
“ haue punished hym, accordançyng to his desertes.

Then the Yowche beyng in a confused amaze, knewe not
what to thinke, but takynge greate compassion of the Ladie
(who wepte pitifullie) he betooke hym self to recomforde
her, the beste that he could , and did so muche that after ha-
uyng staied her teares, she caused hym to bee conducted into
a verie faire Chamber, where there was a riche bedde, and
muche costlie furniture, wherein he laied hymself but in lit-
tle rest, being still troubled with the calke, which the Lady
had with hym, where we a while leauie hym, to tell of other
matters.

The worthy Knight Pharisor, who remained in the Fo-
rest, heard a Knight bitterly complainyng , to speake
muche ill of the Youth of the Fairies : whereat he ta-
king disdaine , there was betwene them so harde and
sharpe a Combate, that both twoo were smitten
doun in a maze, but the Knight of the Forrest beyng
sooner reviued then *Pharisor*, would haue slaine the
Squire Gelastre, who flyng, met with a Knight that
was armed with the Armes , and mounted on the
Horse of his Maister, against whom when the unkno-
wen Knight had foughтен, he slewe him. And suppo-
sing he had bene the Youth of the Fairies , tooke his
Armour and Horse , and went vnto the Emperours
Courte,

Courte, who supposing that the Youth of the Fairies
and his Neuewe had bene dead, was muche agreed
against hym : who thereupon refrained his Courte
and departed.

The xv. Chaprer.



Eleste the gentle knight Pharisor in a
rough Forest, and full of Trees, much
wreched and vexed, because his fellowe,
the Yonthe of the Fairies was so farre
passed, that he could not bee ouertaken,
as not being so well horsed as hee. But
as hee was in thought and talke with
Geliaste the Squire (who also was constrainted to hepe hym
companie) what waite they shold hould the nexte daie to find
hym out, beholde they heard the voyce of a knight, who by
his wordes seemed muche sorowfull and complained very
dolorously, saying with a pitifull and lamentable voyce.
O wicked and peruerse fortune. Is it not now, that I haue
better occasion to complaine mee, of the disfauour thou
shewest me presentely, then for the fauour and grace which
thou deuowedist on me in times past I was bound and bent
to blesse thee? For euen as they whiche will commit some
Traison, shew them selues willing, practising abundance
of pleasures towarde them whom thei wil betraine, to hatie
thereby afterwarde, better meanes to execute more cruelly
their traiterous & disceptive thoughtes: thou hast vsed to
wardes mee like waies and meanes: extolling mee so hie,
that being ready to passe vp to thy hiest degree, of thy wheele,
wher I looked þ thou shouldest set þ place mee, if thou hadist
brought to passe and letten mee to haue achived & brought
awake the yntise of the Justes, so to haue accomplished the
promise which I made to my dame & Lady Poludamia: thou
hast concratly (to the ende that my fall might thereby bee

The Hystorie

“ more damageable and shamefull) traicterously precipitated
“ mee to the most lowe and base roome thereof : the better to
“ bereue mee of all the honour, whiche heretofore I haue had
“ in these Coastes , which haue the reþort to be most abound-
“ dant, in multitude of good knyghtes : the greatest parte of
“ whom, I haue by my mighetie Arme and valiauncie banqui-
“ shed, not onely with Launce, (whiche was no great honour
“ to mee being enchaunted) but also with Swerde, so farre
“ that not wchout great ioye and contentement of her, whom
“ I loue more then my self, and who likewise loueth me more
“ then her self, I was had in reputation for the best knyght of
“ the wþold. But alas what might she saie, if she knew, that in
“ the Emperours Court of Constantinople , there were one
“ founde, who (doþing that, whiche all the knyghtes of greate
“ Britaine could not do) had made me forſake þe Sadle at one
“ stroake with his Launce, I not harming hym in any wise;
“ would she not esteeme me as it were Paris couched in Helens
“ Lappe ? I beyng so muche fauoured of her, that I were be-
“ come a degenerated Cowarde, and nothing worth: who af-
“ ter hauyng vanquished (before he fell in loue at the Games
“ of Thastling) the moſte valiaunt of al Valiaunces, Hector,
“ fledde in fine when moſte neede was of his prowesse, before
“ the furie of fighþe , leſſe fearefull of Menelauis. Noe, noe,
“ I will loſe my life, but I will gaine againe the garde and
“ glosse of myne honour : I will ſo pursue the Glutton (who
“ after he had with one blow ſo caſt mee to ground, fled away)
“ that if I take hym, I will make an Anatomic of his boþie,
“ (þe he the biggest of al the Deuilles) as leſſe Medea did
“ once of the Corps of her brother. The gentil knyght Pha-
“ riſor hauyng hearde these reproachfull, and outragious
“ wþodes against his Companion, could not ſtare, but that
“ lacing his Helmet, and taking his Spear and Shielde, he
“ wente theþer where hee had hearde the knyght, whom hee
“ founde lying on the grasse, and his Helmet vnder his head,
“ whiche ſervid him as a Pillowe or Bolster; whiche he ſee-
“ yng

yng his aduersarie come) put on, and takynge his Hōse
which he helde by the Bridle in one hande, and his Speare
in the other, he mounted by lightly, whiche ching Pharisor
permitted him to doe: who neverthelesse afterwarde saied
to hym. Sir knight, vpon what occasion haue you called
hym Glutton, who is woxhe without comparison, more
then euer you were woxh in your life? and why doe you ac-
cuse of Treason his greate valiauncie? well appeareth ie,
that you haue put small store of wit in your braine.

To this answered the Knight no ching at al (who in his
Shield bare a Griffon of Siluer, in a field of Sable) but re-
tirynge from Pharisor (who put hymself sooward to defende
hym) beyng fullie bent, to reuenge the iniuries whiche he
had saied by his frende) came sodainly (so transpozted with
yre and furie, that he could not aunswere: & rushed against
hym so fiercely vpon his shielde (whiche was of good met-
all) that he made hym so)sake the Saddle: but so counter-
chaunge of this blowe, he was so rudely smitten by Phari-
sor, that he was also brought to grounde & the Saddle at-
twixte his legges: and thinking he had been hym, that had
once afore brought hym from his Hōse, he rose lighelie in
hope to reuenge hym: and verie glad to haue founde hym so
fullie to his wilhe, he came against Pharisor (who atten-
ded his commyng with Sworde in hande) wherewith he
raught hym suche a rappe, that abatyng one graunde quar-
ter of his shield, the blowe light on the Helmet so right, and
with suche force, that his eyes sparkled with fire, who ther-
upon rendered his chaunge shoclie, by a blowe so violente
vpō the side of the Helmet, that (had it not been good) he had
cuc his head i twaine, for so it wente, that he staggered re-
die to fall to the grounde. But retournyng to hym self, he
tooke such harte to hym, that giuing hym with all his force
fve or sixe thwakes all on a rowe, he so amazed hym that
he knewe no more where he was: then as one pricked with
a certayne desire of reuengemente, and seelyng hym self so

The Hy storie

roughlie handeled & taking heed that his aduersarie gaue hym not suche , nor so moxe heauie blowes to endamage hym) he came to strike him on the right side, and on the left, so that he was constrained to giv over his former blowes & to settel his shield where now neede required. And the one might haue seen good spoile, for þ one encountered the other so rashely , as though they had been boþ madde: one would haue thought that there had been more then ten Knights in the Combatte , whiche lasted in this sorte more then an hower, without ceasing of strokes, stil the most furious that euer were seen. In so muche that finallie, through feblenesse and wearinesse (the blood issuing from their many woldes) thei were forced to fall boþe doun in a Traunce , the one here , and the other there , as if thei had been deade, where thei remained more then a longe hower , without stirryng sicker hande or foote.

Wherat the poore Squire Geliaste, supposyng Pharisor to bee deade, and leyng hym self all sole and alone , after an infinite number of piceous complaints and dolorous lamentacions, he went to unlace sir Pharisors Helmet, to see if certainly he were dead or no: but afore that þ knight with the Siluer Cisson arose, beynge revived out of his sounde, whiche thynge the Squire seyng (for feare of hauyng that which he willingly would noe) he tooke himself to flight as faste as he could. But (as he fledde , the Knight still pursyng hym) whis (deemyng Pharisor deade) meante to shewe vpon the Squire the extremitie of his enraged reuenge. But he encountered by chaunce in the wate, a knight armed at all pointes, bearyng a Shielde with a greate Crosse of Golde, in a felds of Sable, mounted vpon the good Lycocephal . To whom (takyng hym for his Maister) he cried and saied : for Gods loue, Maister succour me, and reuenge with like death, the knight Pharisor , whom this Glutton hath slain even now. Then the knight who had no Speare, nor weapon, came to the other knight, & staled hym in speaking

kyng thus:

O faire and Noble Knight (for as muche as I can see, , ,
 you are not verie courtous, so to handle and vse a Squire, , ,
 who hath not wherewithall to defende hym self. Wherat , ,
 the Knight chassed paste all measure, and saied to hym all in , ,
 Chollere: it is euene thee, it is euene thee, whom I will vse so , ,
 then, as well to serue in his steede, as a more ample subiecte , ,
 to my pretended reuenge, as to haue that faire Horse, and , ,
 chose gallaunte Armes, whiche chou bearest farre fitter for , ,
 me, then for thee. And saiyng so, with his naked Sworde in , ,
 his hande, he discharged such a blowe vpon the Knights
 Shielde of the Golden Crosse, that he astonished the arme
 wherewith he helde the same. But he hurtte hym not other-
 wise at that blowe: for his Sworde leapt into the ayre more
 then an elle high: whereat beyng astonished, he redoubled
 with more force his blowes, but he felt it worse and worse:
 For at laste, his Sworde leapt out of his handes, whiche
 thynge the other Knight seyng, who had gotten the Sword
 to defende hym self withall, begaune to strike hym with all
 his puissance, in suche wise, that the Knight of the sil-
 uer Gisson, not knowyng how to behauie hym self, as not
 hauyng wherewith to offendre his enemie, warded by suche
 sleight and shill, his blowes, that in like maner he came to
 catche holde of his bodie, and caste hym so bluncly to the
 gronde, that (beyng not one of the lightest fellowes in the
 worlde) he could not rise againe so lone, but that the other
 had caught hym, and dislaced the Helmet of his head, which
 he cutte in twoo peeces with his sworde: norwiche standyng
 that the other cried hym mercie. And disarmyng hym of all
 the rest of his Harnessse, he putte it vpon hym self, and caste
 the Shielde on his necke, takyng the Sworde whiche he
 had: and mountynge vpon the good Horse Lycoccephal, who
 feeling the Spurres, begaune to prauence and manage in
 suchemanner, that the Knighte never hauyng ridden Horse,
 so prompte and nimble as this same, at his bountie and dex-

The Hystorie

terity became much astonished. Neuerthelesse, more ioyous of the conquest, then if he had been made Emperour of Constantinople: And takyng his waie towardes the Toune, he arived there the nexte daie aboue Noone, where he founde the Emperour and all his Barons and Knightes: who all of purpose moste ioyous had put theiur selues in wate, with moste magnificall braue equipage of the Gace, where thoroewe his entrie late, the more sumptuouslie to receive him.

For the good Knight *Gillart* of Cartage, who the daie afore, had followed him to figh特 with hym at the Sworde, & so to repaire his disgracement gotten at the Justes, hauyng seen hym that Morayng, in a village sixe or seuen miles from Constantinople, where he was alighted to baite his Horse, and deemyng hym to bee the Youthe of the Faieties, hee retourned in all hast, to bryng worde to the Emperour of his commyng: who at the entraunce of the Cittie with all his traine, came to meete hym, causyng at his arriual, to sounde an infinite noyse of Trumpettes, Clarions, Fyses and Drummes, with such other like Instrumentes. Whereof he was muche amarueiled; and could not ludge for what cause he made hym so greate cheare, nor wherefore the gentle Knight *Florenge*, aduanced hym self to embrase hym, and to kisse his handes, saiyng: that he thanked hym, for the deliueryng of his daugheer.

For as muche as I can gesse (said the uncoth Knight) you take me for an other, in that I never remember me, to haue deliuered Damozell from any mannes handes in this Countrie. In saiyng of whiche woordes, and other suche like (they supposing that he spake chese thinges, to conceale & keepe himself unknowen) thei arived in this magnificencie at the Pallacie, where the Tables were spread for dinner. Then at the instaunte request of the Emperour, the unknowen Knight disarmed hym self, to sitte nexte his Maisterie: who (so doyng) had not wholie unlaced his Helmet, but that he made all the compaignie maruellous muche astonisched

shed, whē thei saw plainly þ he was an other, then thei toke hym for. Yea, looke how muche in his Harnesse, & being yet vñknowē he was loued, cherished, & much made of: so much more, out of his Harnesse, and knownen, he was mocked, and mortally hated of many. Seeyng it to bee hym, who at the Justes, had vsed and handeled theim so rudely, yea, & killed some of their compaignions and frendes. In so muche that (had it not been for feare of the Emperour, who for nothyng would suffer any persone to haue outrage in his Courte) a little thyng wuld haue made them to haue slain hym there presentlie. Neuerthelesse, dissemblyng their angrie affections, the beste that thei could, eche one stoode bytyng his lippe, for the greate sorowe and sodaine chaunge they had seen. Wherat, howbeit he was much abashed, and amarueiled, yet placed he hym self at dinner (norwithstan-
dyng) next to the Emperour. During the which (the Em-
perour as kyng hym whence he came, yea, how and where-
fore he had so chaunged Hoise and Harnesse, in obtainyng
such faire ones as he had) he recompted to hym from point
to pointe his whole aduencure, and how (as he was in the
blacke Forrest) he encountereded with those sauage Knigh-
tes, whom the daie before at the Justes, after an harde
and sharpe Combatte hee had there leste deadde. And ta-
kyng that Hoise and Harnesse from the one of them, he was
therewch retourned, to see the end and issue of the Justes:
thankyng hym neuerthelesse for the honour, and greate en-
tertainemente, whiche withoute deserke, it had pleased his
Maiestie to doe hym: vroccyng therfore to performe any
service, þ ic wold please hym to comande hym. Whereto
the Emperour (broughtlie moued with yre and sorowe, as
þy his face, countenaunce, and rowling eyes, wel might ap-
peare) aunswere in this sorte.

Righte (saide he) you neede not to chanke me, of the ho-
nour doen to you, at your enteraunce into this Taire: for so
muche as to you warde it was noe meante, neither was
your

The Hystorie 210

your persone the Sainct, to whom my magnificent Sacri-
fice was vowed. In no wise was it for your entrie (whiche
hath been too damageable and hurtful for vs, yea, that euer
you came herher) that the pompe and magnificencie (wher-
in you haue been brought thus farre) hath been prepared;
but rather for one of them, whom you vaunte to haue slain,
whereof if I were assured, I promise you, you shoud never
passee my Palliace, but that your cruell carkasse shold bee
cutte and chopte in pieces, to serue therewch the Crows
and Rauens. But doubtlesse, the beginning of his deedes, &
feates of Armes soner acertaine me, that if you haue slaine
 hym as you saie, or rather robbed hym of his Harnessse, and
Horse (as well it maie bee) it was surely when he was a
slepe. For otherwise your valiaunce was vise, and courage
uncomparable to his, as well appeared, deuolyte you in
the Tournemente: whose vertue shined as a faire Face
doeth, in a fine and Cristaline glasse. And whereas you of-
fer me your seruice (saide the Emperour, redoublyng his
Challere, and knocking his fiste against the Table) I haue
no neede of it, and lesse of you. Neither knowe I, of whence
you are; but this I saye, That who soeuer ye bee, it is not in
your power, neither in your fresches powers (were it that
you were Kyng Floridamantes Sonne of Greate Brittain)
although you and thei emplioied all their forces to gratifie
me, so as you haue displeased me in killing them: or whom
the one beyng my neare neffue, to witte, the Kyng of Au-
stra his Sonne my deare brother, was one of the best and
valiauntest knyghte of all foryne Empyre. And the other,
was he, wha in prowesse & valiaunce was second to none, as
well hath appeared by the valiaunce whiche he shewed, in
conquyryng the Giaunte's and thei Gardes, at Rocke Al-
pine. For whiche deede I beyng muche beholding to hym,
it will be unpossible (I not knowyng otherwile fro whence
he was) to acquitte my self of so greate an obligacion, as he
had gotten of me, by this greate good tourne: whiche will
cause

cause, that euer henceforthe, I shall bee attainted and blot-
ted, with th soule vice of Ingratitude, whiche aboue all o-
thers I abhorre and detest. And get you from my presence
as soone as you can, that I finde you no moze in my Course:
els will I make you.

And for the great grief whiche he had of the two Knigh-
tes deathes, hee could speake no further, but al angred and
chaffed with despite, he arose from the Table in great ago-
nie: which thing his Meyny seeing, who were partely pric-
ked with the like passions, they would haue ouerrunne the
Knight: who bearing the Emperour so greeuously displea-
sed, was lightly lopen ouer the Table, and (fearyng out-
rage) had already leised upon the best parte of his harnessse,
as Helmet, Shielde, and Swerd, whiche he helde naked in
his hande, and had Raine twoo of the firste, who wente to
offende hym. Whiche thing the Emperour seeyng, cau-
sed the other to cease, who as then basely begannē to assaile
hym mortally on all sides, blaming and reprehending them
sharply for being so rash, in outraging a knight unkownen,
in his presence, and uncommaunded: who acknowledgyng
their faulke, retired and ceased the conflict, leaving the yong
yngly Knight so boylng in yre and despite, that it passed.
Suche was his stomacke enflamed with grieve and anger,
that if he had had them before him in the feldes, they had noe
escaped with the losse of so fewe as they did, neither could
he but speake these outragious wordes to the Emperour.
Kaswe (saide he) thou Emperour of Constantinople, that
thou haste misused in thy Courte, the Sonne of one of the
moste puissant and valiauncefull Kinges of the Earthe, al-
beit that with his person he hath done thee so muche fauour,
(thou not any wate deseruyng it) as to come honour and
beauttie thy Court: who is of power with the ayde of his
frendes, not onely to take vengeaunce of thee and thy fol-
kes for this outragious facte, in destroying thine Emppre: ,
but also to bring in subiection unto him at his pleasure, the

The Hystorie

whole Dominions of all *Asia* and *Africa*. Wherefore
deeme well, that if thy future chaunces bee not guided and
blest by the bountie of some good destenie, which maie take
pittie and compassion on thee : that to thy greate priejudice
this pranke shall not remaine vnpunished. And hauyng so
saied, hee went to finde the good *Horse Lycoccephall*, whiche
his Squire had made ready in the Stable: wherefore he ar-
med himself with the rest of the enchaunted harnesse which
he had gotten: & being ou horsebacke, he went with all hast
oward the Hauen, where after he had made bargaine with
a Ship which was prest to passe into the parties of *Gaule*,
he entered aboord and sailed quietly on the maine Sea, to-
warde the most small, but mooste fertile place that is in the
worlde. But if as then, the puissaunt and coylesome Giaunt
Ergoferans, (who was gone to set order so) the gouernement
of the Castle of Rocke Alpine: þ posseſſio wherof (as wel by
the Imperour, as by the Mouth of the Fairies, as far as he
knew, was left to hym vacat & paſſible) had bene there pre-
sent, he had not gone so thence without Battaille, especially
if he had heard his last wordes of presumptio to the Empe-
rour, whereby he manaced hym most ignominiously: wher-
at he was so galled and greeued, and the other knighthes so
troubled, that they knewe not what to doe. But after that
the bloud of the Imperour, whiche through chased Choler
brged him to this anger, was cooled, and that he had giuen
some release to his grieve, he much repented hym, so to haue
vſed the vnkno men knight aswell for the greace vertue and
prowesse whiche he esteemed to be in hym, as that he under-
ſtoode he was a Christen kinges Sonne: and reputed him-
ſelfe for ſo foule a fact committed in his Court, indigne and
not worthy any more to weare Imperiall Crowne vpon
his head, or to beare Scepter. Neuertheleſſe ponderyng
vpon the vehementē Paſſion and iude occasion whiche
had moued him thereunto, he chaunged opinion, and then a-
gain blamed his Peynie for being ſo bold in this attempt.

On

On thus wise assailed with these two cōtrarietie's, (which in greate furie made hym walke vp and dounе fretting and funning) none daryng to presume presently to comforde or counsell hym, there entered into the Hall a Page, who certifiēd hym that a greate Loide of Persia was arived, who greatly desired to speake with hym, and had brought hym Letters on the behalfe of the greate *Sophy*: whereupon the Emperour chaingyng and dytng his countenaunce with a certaine feined coulour of gladnesse and toye, caused hym to be brought in, to heare his Message, and so to aunswere hym: where wee leue them for a certaine tyme ere we tell you any further.

The pitifull and dolorous complaintes whiche the Lady *Porphyria* made, when she heard of the death of her louer the Youth of the Fairies: and the Maidens *Dynamia* and *Amidree* also heard that *Pharisor* was slayne, whiche thing beeing knownen by the Giaunt *Ergoferant*, hee put hym selfe in queste of the vnu-
-28. 21. knownen Knight, to reuenge their deaths.

The.xvi. Chapiter.



Whiles the Emperour was much enraged towardes the vnkno-
-wen knight, (as you haue heard
in the Chapter precedent) the Empresse with other great Da-
-mes and Damozelles were at
Dinnet in her Chamber, and the Lady *Porphyria* with her Co-
-sin *Harderine*, were in theirs, to
prate and parlee of the Personage & prowesse of the Youth
of the Fairies, whom they deemed to haue bene at Dinner
with her fater the Emperour, & the Lady *Porphyria* was

T.ii. purposed

The Hystorie

purposed to haue spoken to hym , after Dinner , and giue hym some certaine secret signe and testimonie of the amorous alterations , whiche with an infinite number of grieses and dolours still distrelled her poore hearee . But the Empresse hearing into her Chamber the pefull woordes of the Emperour , who cried and spake lowde , and also the sound of Swerdes and Harnesse in the Hall , when as the Emperours folkes wold haue slaine the knight vnkno-
men : desirous to understande the cause of this tumult , she had sent one of her Damozelles daune , expesly to knowe the newes , and to bryng her word therof : who hauyng learned the matter , came againe all amased and sorrowfull , to tell her of the pitifull death of her Nnew Pharisor , whom she so much loued , and of the valiaunc Youth of the Fairies whō she no leſſe esteemed , for the great good tournes which he had doone them , in deliuering them from the continuall care , that clogged them all , whiles the Giauntes Ferclaste and Androfor were aliue and vsklaine of hym .

The Empresse and her Damozelles hearing so piteous a styrre and disorder , cast soorth a most lamentable grie , accompanied with a floud of Teares , distilling from their radiant eies along their most amiable faces : and so quicke dispossessed with newe distresses , ceassed not to weepe and lament , some for the loue of Pharisor (who to many of them was frende and parent) other some per compagnio , to see their fellowcs weep so extremely ,ooke therat so greate compassion , that (as women are alwaies most enclinable to the chaunge of affections) as I sated , to beare their frendes compaニー , more then for gries they had , they made such ac-
cordaunt moane and voile , that never hearee was so harde whom it wold not haue moued to pittie and compassion : & especially if he had heard the cōplaintes & lamentations of the Damozell Dinamys sister to Pharisor and Amidree , who (though he were in no wise amorous of her) yet bur-
ning in loue towarde hym , she made suche lamentations ,
that

that (as it were halfe mad) shee ranne awaie shitting and
 cryng into her Chamber, whiche was adioyning to that
 where faire Lady Porphyria was (not knowing ought of all
 this) with her Colyn Harderine, who hearing the lamenta-
 ble moanes of *Amidree*, went presently into her Chamber,
 where ther found her dead-sounded in the place. Whom (af-
 ter they had wch cold water, and other such like thinges,
 recouered to her former senees) they asked and praid her
 deepeley, to declare unto them, the cause of her dolour and
 greate lamentations: whiche she (not able to keepe it cou-
 red any longer) confessed, and with a lowe and troubled or-
 der of boyce, saied thus: Alas and wellawaie, Ladies myne,
 Ah my deere frende Pharsor is dead: what (saied the Ladie
Porphyria, may that be? and is he dead in deede? O my deere
Colyn: But tell me *Amidree* in veritie who hath reported
 these newes? For I can not perswade my self þt it is so, seing
 he had in his cōpaigny a Knight, by whose safconduite (as
 well of his valiaunce hath experience been shewed) he was
 sufficiente to discomfite a whole armie: but I beleue it is
 some one, wha (to make a kynde of prooste of your loue to-
 ward hym) hath dasht you out of countenaunce, with this
 straftie cloakedcale. Ah Davame, (saied *Amidree*) would
 GOD, you newtated true: but there is nothing more cer-
 taine: as well his murderer is lately come to bauace hym
 selfes herof within, armed with the Armes, and mounted
 on the same Horse, whiche was once that gentle Knightes,
 that ouercame the Giaunter, whom he hath also slaine, and
 spoyle of thereof. And hereat the Emperour is so enraged,
 wha he hath ignominiouslie casted hym out of his Court,
 although the Taictiffe was he (a thyng whiche makes me
 rather to beleue it) whiche lastlie bare hym self so valiaunc
 in the Justes, that none could resist the poise of his puiss-
 ance, but to deach he went, were he never so well Armed.

At these last wordes was the Ladie *Porphyria*, so surprised
 with asodaine shuyerpng of dolesome feare, that she could

•25.10
The Hystorie

not speake a word more: her hart & mouth beyng as it were closed vp rounde, with a sodaine passion of chose pitifull newes: in so muche that she fell doune flatte in the place, rather as one deade, then in a sounde as she was: and became so pale and wanne, that it was wounderfull: not moouyng nor stirring, moare then a corps quighte destitute of vitall breath. Wherof the Maidens Harderine and Amidree had so greate feare, that trembyng soz rows ther ranne (redoublyng still their complaints) with speede, to recompte to the other mournyng Maidens (whom ther founde althoughe quite douned in teares, yet enforcyng them selues the beste ther could, to cōfōre the desolate Dynamys) this second mischies, and mournefull hap of the death of the yong Princesse. Wherac they all leauyng Dynamys, ran sodainly to see her, and firste of all the Empresse, who firste enteryng into Amidrees Chamber where she was, she sawe the corps of her miserable childe, lyng flatte in the place for dead: and running to imbrace it, it is impossible to expresse, and muche lesse to wryte the dolorous complaints, & bitter cries which she cast sooz the bedewyng her (I beleue) with greater abundance of teares, tricklyng from her tender eyes) then the gate spyng eyme is wonce to shewe of flowers and plantes, in quanticie and quality bothe, to decke and illustrate the greene fertile Fieldes, enuironed with the Riuier Nilus or rather with more number and shew, thā there is Landes, vpon the banckes of eche running Riuier that make their courses & with furious force vomit their somie floods into the wyde Ocean Sea: and (if I should late more) then the number of Starres in the heauen, when in a cleare & frostie night they seme most to appeare, I shoulde not lye. So was the number infinite, wherewith this infortunat Dame bached (as though she had been plunged in a depe runnyng Riuier) the corps of this uncomparable faire & desolate Princesse. Who (in fine) felyng her so bewette, and hearyng the scrichyng and lamentable cries (tedious

of Gerileon.

fol. 76.

to tell) as wel of the Empresse, as of her cousin Harderine, Marcella, and all the other Damozelles, shce beganne to reuue, and by little and little recoueryng, in castynge forthe a pittifull and profounde sighe, she opened her eyes a little; then seeyng and vnderstanding their cries & lamentacions, whiche were aboute her, enforcyng them selues to liffe her vp, and carie her into her Chamber, to repose her self vpon her bedde: She fell dounre againe worse then afore: this put-tyng her a newe in remembraunce, of her vehemente and late dolour. Then shold ye haue heard a fearefull redou- blyng of Teares, and lamentable cries on all partes: who then chinkyng verely that she was paste recouerie, seeyng that neither with colde wacer, with rubbyng her pulses, ne ought els, they could not wolke, but that she was a whole longe hower in this extasie, without either stirryng hande or foote: They wailed piteouslie, and made a stirre, pena greater then the Troians Cassandra and Hecuba, seeyng their Infantes, Brothers, and Nephues slaine and murde-red, by the reuengyng blades of the Grecches, and their no-ble Cittie putte to sacke by fire and sworde, whiche lone consumed it. Neuerthelesse, not knowyng what reme-die to vse, thei conuaighed her straight into her Chamber, and laied her vpon her bedde, departyng all, sauyng Harderine and Marcella, who vpon the corps, ceased not to waile and speake thereto, as if it had vnderstode them, the othes- goyng towardes the Empresse.

Who on the other side was sounded in Amidrees Chanc- bers, thinking at the seconde crye of the Damozelles, that verilie her daughter had beene dead, who after a while bee- yng somewhat reuuen, was then layed in her bedde by the Damozelles Harderine and Marcella, who to their power did striue to comforthe her: but all in vaine. For she not able to giue neuer so little release to her dolour, consideryng her selfe quite destitute of meane whereby she might euer recure her ragyng loue, which still flamyng and encressing

in

The Hystorie

in her, caused and made, that her griece was farre greater
then death it selfe, chaffed in her mind a great while against
loue, for wounding her so sodenly, pena so sharply and sure-
ly with his venomous shaftes: then againe excusing hym
for so muche fauouring and blessing her, as to bende and set
her besse likyng in a place so digne and worthy of her, who
vnder heauen found none her matthe but hym onely: then
breathed she forth her yre & anger against deach, for taking
from her a gift so rare and precious: whom *Venus* Insane
of mere bouny had bestowed vpon her: Beseechyng her, that
in middest of so many miseries & sorowes, she would in like
wise strike her with the same Darse, wherewith her deere
frend was so wounded and murdred: to the ende, that where
hee was either in the Celestiall or Infernall Mansion, shee
might goe and accompaaigne hym, so to open unto hym the
fullme of her dolorous distresses: Then considering that
Death, having no puissance on her (as it, which is nothing
els but the dissolution and separation of the Soule from
the bodie) through the desaute of some of the fower Ele-
mentes (wherof the diuine prouidence hath created man)
she made her humble and hartie Praier unto the soueraine
Creatour of all thinges, most iustanctlie requiring him, to
cut asunder the Thride of her life, if it were his pleasure:
therby to rid her from the unsupportable dolours & distres-
ses, whch most impaciency she endured. But *GOD*, who
had not ordeined to ende and finish her daies in suchе hastie
sorte: nor leetyng her to wite, that as he can courne the moste
cleare and bright daies, into obscure and darkesome nigh-
tes, and the same againe into daies more shining and radi-
ant, then the resplendaunce beames of *Phœbus*: euен so al-
so hath he power (shewyng her the severer Uisage of a Fox-
tune more propitious and fauourable, then it could then
seeme or appeare, imploying her back to the burden of an
infinite number of anguishes and dolours, couered with a
cloudy Veile of cares & distresses,) to take her (at her owne
desire

desire) out of the middest of the Labyrinth of so manie mischieues, which oppressed her on all sides, & would not heare her Praier, albeit hee well permitted, that through mere griefe, she nerehand had appoached, the Porte Acherontiall, by the excesse and vehemence of a greeuous Maladie, which caused in her a continuall Feuer: which surpzyng her, handled her in suche sorte, that through the trembyng fitnes commonlie accompanying suche like payned pacientes, she made the bed to daunce, wheron shee laye: whiche neverthelesse ceasing, a slumbering Sleepe surpzyzed her, whiche coueryng her cogitations, with a dreamyng obliuiousnes, suffered her to take some rest. For vntesse the naturall order of all thinges bee peruerter, as one seeth not alwaies, the hoat Skaldyng Planet, to brye vp the floating streames of floudes and Riuers, nor the colde North in Wincer, to make destitute the pleasaunt Forestes of their greene couloured garmetes, whitch the sprouting Springtyme hath bestowed vppon them: So is it also vnpossible, that (without release) a continuall grief should haue place in a humaine corps, not adnichilating & totally euitating the same. No lesse neither can an extreeme ioye remaine without some intermission of his contrarie. And therfore Nature beyng then so fauourable to this anguishe and misera ble Princesse, that (to encounter her aduerse Fortune) shee permitted her the hauyng of some little rest: her Damozelles drawingyn the Courteines of her Bed, and shutting in the chamber windowes, departed towardes the Empresse. To whom (not long afore reuined from sound) shei recom yted) to consolat her withall) that her Daughter slept soundly at her easie: which thyng she could not beleue, afoxe she sawe it: but when she had tried it true, she enforced her selfe to giue truce to her pitiful plaiantes and teares. But if she liued the in dolour for the loue of her daughter, and her daughter likewise for the death of her late frend, the Youth of the Faries, the young and faire Maiden *Dynamia* (who

U.s. by

The Hystorie

by the Emperours consent, was louer and beloued also of the good & valiaunt Giant Ergoferant) was oppressed with noe lesse grieve then they, for the death of her good and louyng brother Pharisor, not able without incessant weeping and lamentyng, to supporze and endure the remembrance of so luckles a chaunce, through the vehemencie of fraternall amitie (which in all honest and naturall loues hath and holdeth the head roume, and place) so that shee was in her Chāber lamenting and complaining in sorte as followeth:

“ Alas *Dynamia* the moste lucklesse and desolate, that is at
“ this daie liuyng vnder Heauens, yea, no lesse then thou wast
“ happye and fortunate, to bee sister to the moste valiaunt and
“ beste knight in perfections of all Greece: what happe, what
“ blessednesse, what reste, what consolation, or what supporze
“ hopeste thou to haue from henceforwarde in this worlde,
“ wherein nought can bee durable or parmanent, that in
“ one daie is not founde vnstable: Somewhiles when one is
“ depryued of ioye, by the successe of some lucklesse encou-
“ rance or chaunce: somewhiles whē any grief most torment-
“ eth vs, & ouerwhelmeth our stomackes, by the hap of some
“ good hower: which neuerthelesse is lesse durable, (chiefly to
“ me) then the saied mischies and moste haplesse happe: since
“ that it is so, that thou seest thy selfe depryued of a brother, the
“ moste active and valiaunce, that euer was seen in these co-
“ stes: who beyng causer of all the felicitie, and contentmente
“ thou haddest in this life, it can not bee that henceforwarde,
“ thou shouldest liue to see ought els to followe or environ
“ thee, but al sortes of ill hap and discomforste, laboursome tra-
“ uaile and discontentation: if Death shewe not her selfe so
“ courteous, and extende not her clemencie so muche to war-
“ des thee, as to vs upon this thy miserable corps, the same
“ rigour that shee hath shewed to thy beloued Brother. O
“ murderer cruell, inhumaine, and detestable, whiche haste
“ slaine hym: accursed bee the hower and iourney, that euer
“ thou madest, to come into this Countrie, to leaue vs so pitifull

of Getileon. fol. 78.

rifull a patterne of thy wickednesse. And accursed bee the ;
Chymera or cruell Lionesse , whose pappes erst gaue thee ,
sucke: and that it had pleased God, that thou hadst been vn- ,
tymely borne, or smouldered in her wombe. O art not thou ,
of more peruerse and naughtey nature, then a Tigre, Beare ,
or wilde Boare : more fell and cruell then euer Afrique ,
hredded or nourished : So traiterouslie and villanouslie to ,
haue murdered hym, whiche never gaue occasion (no not in ,
the least of his thoughtes) wlongfullie or without cause, to ,
damage or offend the least creature that euer GOD made ,
on yearth : at leastwise hungrie Wolfe glutted with hu- ,
maine blood , why was it that thou satisfied not thyne vn- ,
reasonable appetite , vpon this poore and miserable Da- ,
mozel: Why hast thou noe with the same murdying glaue ,
(whiche so ended his daies , and made me destitute of the ,
thyng , I helde moste deare in this worlde) bemangled and ,
killed the corps of her, who how long so euer she liuech, can ,
not be but infortunate and distressed. Ah, noble King of Au- ,
striamy Father, I feare mee, that the insupportable dolour ,
which you shall receiue (in hearyng these heauy & dolorous ,
nouelles of the death of hym, which was the onely stae and ,
vpholder of your old age) shal not giue much aduauncemēt ,
to the course of your long yeres, who alredy hane whitened ,
both your hoary head and beard. And that ensewing shocly ,
after the message, whiche shall acertaine you of your daugh- ,
ter Dynamias Deach, who for loue of hym is resolued to di- ,
spatche her self with her owne proper handes. I haue great ,
feare (and the feare I haue thereof, maketh me vse this lan- ,
guage, & to premeditate that mischiefe) that with a headlong ,
and swift hastenyng course, you will bende your steppes to- ,
wardes that parte, where the Feriman Charon blyth all his ,
trade. But what seeing that the destenies haue of long time ,
spunne vs this ill happe , Is there any that can withstande ,
it: No, no, none, be he never so strong or mightie, can resist ,
it. It restes, it restes, that to make an ende of my miseries ,

The Hystorie

" I goe to keepe compaignie and visite hym, on whom depen-
" ded all my iope and comforce.

Whiles she thus spake, complainyng, and tormentyng
her self moste bitterly, and dolorously, the good Giaunt Er-
goferant, whiche hastened to arriue from Rocke Alpine, be-
holding all those whiche were in the Emperours Hall as-
sembled, with intent to dispatche & aunswere the Letters of
the great Sopby of Persia, to haue their faces chaunged with
a certein greate kinde of sorrow and sadnes, & which much
 vexed them. To know the occasion therof, he tooke his way
into the Chamber of his Lady and Mistresse Dinamyas, whā
he sorrowfully found in estate as is aforesaid, wherevpon
(asfer he had employed some paines to pacifie her, and shee
consolatynge her selfe somewhat by his commynge) he asked
her from whence proceded these plaintes and lamentations
which incited her to torment her selfe so: to whom, not able
to conceale her sorrow, she recompted (although much feare-
full to loose hym therby, as in deede she did afterwarde) the
occasion of her great griefe. Whereat it needes not to tell,
if the most noble and vertuous Giaunt that euer was, were
angrie, aswell for the losse of his Ladies deere and louyng
brother: as for the loue of hym, who onely sauced his life,
and for that cause he was no lesse bounden, then for her. For
in giuyng comforce & consolation to this young and noble
Princesse, he armēd hym selfe with his Harnesse and Club,
and mountynge vpon a good and myghtie Horse whiche he
had, he departed in the secretest wise hee could, from the
Courte, in deliberation never to taste sound sleepe, till hee
had reencountred the knight murderer of those, who in this
world he esteemed most: & to be revenged of their deaches, els
to go visite them where euer they were. Where we let hym
go and leauē the Ladies muche sadde and sorrowfull, to re-
compte unto you how the knight, whiche was slaine in the
Forest by the knight vñknowne, had stollen the Youche of
the Fairies his Horse and Harnesse, whō we left in the Ca-
stell

field de la Plaine, with the amorous Damozel, louelesse, and slauie to loue for euer, daughter to the Duke of Chalcide; and of that that chaunced him after he went thence: chieffly also to speake of *Pharisor*, and where he happened to be reuiued from his Traunce.

The Youth of the Fairies beeing lodged at the Castle *de la Playne*, his Horse and Harness were stollen from him; and going to seeke the Thiefe, he encouerted in a wood, a marueilous *Crocodile*, whiche after a long cōbate he slewē: Then goyng somewhat forward, he found the dead corps of the knight, which had stollē his Harness and horse, which he could not finde, but those of the vñknownen Knightes he sawe: whiche he tooke, and armed him selfe, and after encouerted the Squire *Geliaste*, whiche slept in the Forrest: who led hym into the place where the Combate had beeene betweene *Pharisor* and the vñknownen Knighte.

The xvij. Chapter.



After the hard & sharpe Combate which was betwéene the good Knight *Pharisor*, and the valiaunt vñknownen knight, we haue afore declared, that hee prickē with greate disdaine and dolour, to bee so castle to grounde by the Youtche of the Fairies, extended further the desire of his reuenge: whiche blinded him in suche sorte, that forgyng all honest courtesie (whiche naturally accompaniech the heartes, that are replete with gentilicie and noblenes, such as his) and without any regarde thereto, when he was reuiued from the Traunce sooner then *Pharisor*, hee purposed in hym selfe to annoy and hurte the Squire *Geliaste*, who to shun the daunger of death whiche he saw imminent,

U.iiij. tooke

The Hystorie

tooke hymselfe to sodaine flight: and his enemie the knight
following him, was staid by one, who armed with the Har-
nesse & mounted on the good horse of the Youth of the Fai-
ries, was by him slain, as at large you may see in the sixtēch
Chapter. Wherewpon thinkyng he had put to death hym,
who had soyled him afore in the Justes, and his fellow whō
he had left so faint and feeble, for losse of his bloud chydough
an innumerable sorte of woundes, whiche he had susteined,
he had vaunted hymselfe thereof in the Emperours Court:
thinking it a valiaunt Act, as if it had beene true: and ther-
ewpon caused that sorrow and sadnes, to trouble the Court
withall, as afore you haue hearde in the Chapters prece-
dent. But to the ende the happe thereof may bee notified to
every one, it is to be vnderstandinge, that the faire and gentle
Youth of the Fairies beyng entered into the Castle *de la*
Playne, where he receiued the best entercainment, that the
amourous Damozell, (frendlesse perforce) could devise to
make hym: The knight which came to open hym the Gate,
seyng hym armed and horsed so well, & being desirous to be
pursued with hym self, by what meanes he might haue them.
And (as one which was not the bouldest man of the wold)
seyng, and knowing, that if he presumed to haue them per-
force (the euent of Battell beeing doubtfull and uncer-
taine) fearyng lest the losse shoulde light on his side, conside-
ryng the greate prowesse and valiauncie, wherwith, by his
face and faire disposition he seemed to be adornd, with whō
hee in this case shoulde haue to deale, thought it better (to
his greate dishonour) to obtaine them by disceite and cray-
son as he did. For the Youth being brought abedde, hauing
afore spent a great parte of the night, aswell in perpending
the talke which he had had with the Damozel all Supper-
while, as in imagination of her beautie, who deemyng her
dead, was nearer thereto hym selfe, hee fell on sleape about
midnight: wherof y couerous knight being aduised, which
was

was in watche in a Chamber next to his adioyning, which he had forgot to shut at his going to bedde, entered easelie and secretlie into the same: and finding his Swerde and Harnesse, tooke theim, and went into the Stable, where he mounted vpon his Horse, and departed with full intent to do merueiles, or els of so faire a gifte to make p[re]sentacion to the Emperour of Constantinople, so to winne his good grace and fauour. But he was not farre past, but they were taken from hym, with losse of his life also, by the vnknowen knight, as you haue afore heard. (God who iſ the iuste reuenger and puniſher of outragious Faultes and Traiſons, not ſuffering not onely w[hat] a Robber and diſceiuier ſhould bee ſuffered to haue long or profitable enioynig of this ſo euell[y] gotten, did puniſhe the offence both ſore and ſhortly,) This notwithstanding could not mittigate nor appeaſe, the bitternes of ſorrowe whiche the Youthe of the Fairies had, when as he in the moorning aris[ing], found neither his Swerd nor Harnelle in the Chamber, where ouer night hee had laide them, neither his Horse in the Stable. For of all his furniture the Thief had leſt hym noug[ht], but the onely chaunted Launce, whiche hee had wonne the date before, in the Iustes of the vnknowen Knight. Whiche he taking, and after hauing knowē certeinly, that without the Damozelles conſent of þ Castle (which of his miſfortune was muſche diſpleased) the Knight, who in the euening had opened hym the Gate, had committed this diſloyaltie and traſon, he tooke leaue of her: who gaue him a horse the beſt ſhe had: wherupon, unarm'd as he was, he leapt and deparred ſtreight toward the Forrest, to take and apprehend the diſloyall Knight which had ſo diſceiuied him: thinking that ſhonest that waies he would take his Journey. But whē he was farre entered into the ſame, the Sunne then drawyng hie and caſtyng ardent heate, & he alſo going towardes the moſt chicke and rough places, alſwell in that, he had ſome o-
pinion þ the Thiefe was hid there, as to ſhun the parchyng
heat[e]

The Hystorie

heatē of Sunne) hee heard a verie lamentable and plain-
tieffe boyce: whiche so moued hym to compassion, that chin-
king it had been some pooze desolate person, fallen into the
handes of some Robbers and Villaines, or rather some un-
fortunate Damozell, rauished by some Roysters, he wente
thertherwarde to succour her, although with much difficultie:
for what blowes w̄ spurres so euer he gaue to his horse,
he could not in any wise make hym goe forwarde: yet p̄ic-
ked he hym so soze, that Pawgre hymselfe, he was constrain-
ned to go to the place where the boyce plaintiffe was, nāre
whiche he scarce had come by sixe or seauē paces, but þ he e-
spied the greatest & dismeasured Crocodile þ euer was seene,
commynge towardes hym with open thoate, and gapping
Jawes to deuour hym, and with his twoo forepawes ram-
pyng, sealed vpon the Horse by the Necke with such soze
and vigour, wreathyng his Tayle of tenne or twelue foote
long all aboue his Feete afōre, that he was forced to falle
forward to the ground, & his Maister also: who being lige
& nimble as he was, without semblaunce of any feare at al,
recouered himselfe straighwaies (þo afōre his Horse fell,
he had prepared hym selfe for the Beastes commynge, and
was readie to alight) and grypping the Launce whiche hee
had in his right hand, and his Mancell wrapped about his
lefte Arme, hee came towardes this furious and terrible
Beast: which did her best to take and deuour hym, as beyng
muche an hungred: and not haing eaten ought of long to-
soze, he gaue her suche a forcible blowe upon the belly with
all his myght, that hee pearced quite throughe the same.
Then the Beast seeing her selfe wounded to deach, approa-
chyng hym before hee had leasure to redouble his stroake,
with one of her Pawes gaue hym suche a graspe, that if he
had not with great lighenesste leapt backe, and cast his Man-
cell afōre hym: without doubt therewith hee h̄d ended his
daies. For this horriblie beast had the Nailles of his pawes
more then a foote and a halfe long, pearcyng and sharpe-

past measure, wherewith in greate rage and despite, percei-
uing his deach to be neere, he tare and puld the Mantell a-
foresaide in peeces, whiche was of Scarlet, the fearest that
could be seen, edged and embrodered with Gold, and greate
Buttons of Pearle, to wit, those whiche the Faire Ozyris
had giuen hym. Thus whiles hee whiche had moe care to
spoyle and put her to death, then to sauе and take his Man-
tell from her, smot her on the backe and brest, with such
meruisous blowes (albeit such beastes haue commonlie
Skales on their corps moe hard then any yron or Steele)
that at last he left her dead in the place. Then leaping on his
Horse, whiche pitifully was wounded vpon the Necke by
the Crocodile, he passed forward in a little pathway, streight
to the place where his Thiefe was slaine, whose Carcasse
he founde halfe devoured, with byrdes and wilde beastes:
whereat he was muche abashed and ameruelled, chiefly be-
cause he founde not his Horse and Harnessse with hym: but
well he founde the Knights Harnessse which had slain him:
whiche he knewe by and by to be his, against whom the day
before he had Justed. Wherfore doubtyng that which was
come to passe, he tooke the same and armed hym selfe there-
with the besste hee could, and hauyng the shield aboute his
necke, and the Sworde at his side, he tooke his Speare;
and beyng aboute to mount on his Horse, and departe to
searche after hym whiche nowe had his furniture, beholde
his horse fell starkē dead to the ground, because of the great
quancie of bloud whiche hee had shedde by his woundes.
Whereat the gentle Youth of the Fairies was much ama-
zed, because against custome he must nowe trudge on foote.
But with patience houldyng the same Patte whiche had
brought hym thither, he had not gone farre, but he espied a
Horse whiche beyng well Sadled, hauyng the Bridle han-
ging at the Sadle howe, fed faste on the Grass: whiche he
knewe also to be the foresaide Knights Horse, of whom he
had conquered the Launce in Justes, and now had his Har-
nessse,

The Hystorie

nesse:neuerthelesse he staid not for that, but after he had put
the Bridle in his mouth, hee mounted on his backe, glad of
so fauourable an happe: And continuing his queste accom-
panyng as hee sawe the traces of the Horses besyde hym, hee
wente so farre, that an hower or twoo after Noone, at the
foote of a shadye Treē, hee apperceuied a young Squire a-
sleepe, stretched along vpon the grasse, hauyng an Horse sa-
kened to his right Arme by the Bridle, and his Face all be-
sprent with Teares: whose Uisage seemed to see too, moste
sorowfull and sad: whereof the Youtch was right sorowfull,
and had muche pittie to see him in so poore an estate, chiefly
knowyng that it was his Squire Geliaste: who awaked,
whiles the Youtch of the Fairies al astonished of so straunge
an aduenture, staied hymself to behold hym: in so much that
his Horse perceiuing the other straunge Staede, would haue
fled, and so trailed the poore Squire after hym (till his
Maister takyng hym by the Bridle, staied hym: which done,
and Geliaste awaked, it is no neede to tell if the poore slave
were amazed or noe: seyng his shape there whō he thought
was come for none other intention, but to put him to death,
and would gladye haue runne awaie, but that the Bridle
helde hym by the Arme. Whereat the Youtche, muche mar-
ueilyng, said: what meanest thou Beast, or vpon what occa-
sion, art thou so afraide, lest I kill thee? Alas sir (saied hee)
I doe it beecause yesterdaie ye would haue kilde mee after
ye had put to death my Maister, the Youtche of the Fairies
his frende & fellow: who willing to succour mee, was ther-
fore slaine not far hence by your handes. The Youtch more
desirous then afore to knowe what made hym so to say, and
seyng him still more and more astonished: unlaced, his Hel-
met that then he might know him. Who then remembryng
hym, and commyng to hymselfe, was surp̄zyed with such
extreeme ioye, that it transp̄xted hym without respecte to
runne and embrace his Maister: sayng. Ha Maister, what
is it that hath raised you againe from dead? Might it possi-
bly

ble be the Fairie Ozyris, your good Mother, whiche hath
by her arte reduced you again from deach to life, and giuen
you these Armes like to thole whiche the vncourteous and
outragious knight had, which yesterday would haue staine
mee, to the ende to affraite me, so as you haue done: I assur
you I am now therof as glad as I was euē now sorrow-
full, thinking at your handes to haue received my deaches
dint, since you seemed another. But tell me I prai thee Ge-
raste, why thou thus speakest, said the YOUTH: or vpon what
occasion: for I can neuer remember that I was wounded
of any person, but of the Giaunt Ergoferant, when I fought
against hym, muche lesse slayne: then how can this be? Also
I meruell very greatly, in that thou saiest my deare frende
Pharisor is dead. Then did the Squire recount unto hym,
(from point to point) all the successe of the aduentures pas-
sed the day before, as is aforesaid: whereat the YOUTH was
tossed with extreeme dolour, hauyng intelligence of Phari-
sors death, and comauanded the Squire to bring hym wherc
he yet laye, whereto, (they being bothe mounted on horse) he
failed not to obay. But when they were arived to the place
where þ combat had bene attchiued, they were much sorow-
full that they could not finde his corps, to bury & Entombe
it honourably, as to the greatness of his birth, but chiefly to
his great vertue and valiauncie, apperteined. They founde
the place where he had laine long all blcedyng and bloudy,
which also was couered with many litle peeces of his Har-
nesse: which moued the YOUTH to suche compassion, that he-
yng attainted in harte with an insupporable dolour and
distresse which sodainly at the sight therof surpysed him,
it lacked little that hee had not then and there fullye soun-
ded in the place: and I thinke that if his magnanimitie and
hartie valiauncie could haue giuen place in greatness and
force, to his extreeme dolour, hee had done ic. So sure al-
ready had he emprynted the vehement amitie that hee bare,
to that man in his harte, hauyng beene in his companie,

X.II. but

The Hystorie

but thre or fower daies: as well for the prowesse and vertue, wherewith hee was enriched aboue all others, as for the singuler courtesie and frendshippe which so shined in them both alike, that they almost seemed bothe one body, bente to one course of kinde. But suppoynge the most pacientlie he could, his extreeme dole and sorrow, he did as then nought els, but weepe and bewayle hym so lamentable, that dole and sorrow themselues could not surpassee hym in sighes and teares, whiche ranne like rushyng Rivers vpon his tender cheekes: which to declare I must take a brieser course: tellyng only how assone as he could haue any staine of his lamentacions, he made vowe and sware never to rest in place, clymat or countrie, till he had found out the Knight which had slaine hym, to reuenge his death, althoough in deede hee were shoxelie after as sounde and lustie as euer hee was. As you shall heare in the Chapter followyng.



How the Giaunt Ergofrant who was gone to seeke the knight vnkownne, to reuenge the death of Pharisor, findyng hym in place where he was left in a Traunce, after the Combate, tooke and carried hym vnto the Emperours court, where he was healed of his wounedes, by the excellente Chirurgian Maister Rabalon: whereof the Damozelles Dynamia and Amydree, were muche ioyous, and the Lady Porphyria, somewhat consolated. And how the Youth of the Fayries arriued in a village, where he had tydinges of the vnownen Knight, who bare his Armes and had his Horse.

The

The xvij. Chapiter.



He slow arrial of the Yonch of the Fairies towardeſ the place where the cruel and daungerous Combate had bene betweene the twoo good Knights unknownen, and Pharisor : was occasion and let, that hee founde hym not as hee had thought to haue done, and that because it was very lbg ere he could arive at the place, where hee was leſte for dead, throughe the aboundinge of bloud, whiche he had lost beyng so wounded in the Combate. For a while afore, the good Giaunt Ergoferans, (who was gone to ſeke for the unknowen knight, to renenge his death, going throughe the Forest heard hym: who reuiued frō ſound, and yet lyng on the Grasse, not able to arife complained, and lamented, right dolourouſly, for his deare frend and fellow the Yonch of the Fairies: and going where he was, yet not thinking it to haue bene hym, hee found hym in ſo pitiful & miserable an estate, that if then preſentlie hee had noſ had ſuccour, he miſt haue peribed by the Gholt: not ſo much for the grieuousnes of his woundes, whiche were not moſ tall, as for the yokesomnes hee had of his frendes absence, whom he thought to haue fled (of purpose) to leauē hym, as diſpiling his compagnie. But the good Giaunt not without great maruell of ſo good a reencoſter, cooke hym vp ſoftly betweene his armes, and as one wonderous ſtrong, caried hym eaſely towardeſ the Towne of Constantinople, not without telling hym along by the way, the sorrow and dole wherein he had leſte his ſister Dimanya, with the Empyrelle and her Damszelles, and conſequently all the Emperours Courte, because of his death, which they had heard by the ſelue ſame Knight, who ſo had wounded hym: demaunding hym in like maner the cauſe of their combatyng, whiche he could vnto hym at large: vntill ſuche tyme as approachyng

Xiiij. neere

The Hystorie

nere to a certaine village whiche was but ffeue or sixe Fur-
longes frō the City, þ night (also) approaching, they were
constrained to retire into a certeine Ile, where they were
honestlie and honourably entertained by the Hoste of the
house: who knewe the Giaunt and the Knight also to be of
the Emperours Court: and there were some Salues and
Plaisters laide to the woundes of *Pharisor*, by a certaine
Chirurgian whiche dwelt in that Towne, whiche notwithstanding,
when they arrived, the Morowe after at Constan-
tinople, were taken awaie by Maister Rabalon: who put-
ting in their place precious Dyncementes, wherof he had
alwaies store, he did so well, that to the great contentment
of the Emperour, Empresse, and *Dynamia*, with all the o-
ther Knightes, Dames, and Damozelles, bee received his
perfecte health in the space of ffeue daies. And for this cause
though the renouation of an vnspeakable ioye, the chiche
Hyste of soverassed sorrowes, whiche afore had holden their
heartes with infinite number of Anguishes and Teares, re-
mained, as vanished and dissolued, especially with *Dyna-
mia*. Who hauyng recovered the obiect of her griefe, was
reduced into her pristine forme of ioye and felicitie, contra-
ry to the Lady *Prrphria*: who seeyng her selfe deprivid of
hym, who on her had fatallly fixid his fancie, not able to
giue any releasement to her Passions and grieuous malla-
dy, what comforde or consolation soever, either the Empe-
rour or Empresse gaue unto her, bringyng her in mynde
of her Cosines retorne: the feare and suspicion of whose
death was cause of her Mallady, as they deemed, and there-
fore should now cause (their opinion beyng false and vain)
her small recovery of health. But beyng wholly ignorant
where the Thorne pricked her, they could no ways worke,
but that she waryng still worse and worse, hastened still to-
wardes the blacke *Stygian* Lake, had it not beene for the
comforde whiche the Damozelles *Marcella* and *Harderine*,
(who knowyng the full occasion thereof) recomforstid her
with

with the hope they had that his Death was noe lesse true
then *Pharisors*: and that the vnknowen knight whiche had
caused those Nouelles, had not done it, but onlie to bragge
and boast hym selfe thereof, or els to couer the dishonsur
he had gocten at the Justes, whereat she was somewhat re-
leased of payne: yet not able altogether to leauue her Feuer
and become whole and sounde. In this wile remained the
poore languishing Princesse full of sorrowe, and paine,
for the loue of hym, who beeynge noe lesse greeued through
the equalicie of their Disease, if hee had knownen their
affections and alteracions of the Spirite to bee recipro-
cate,rather then to live in continual thought and anguish,
as afterwardes he did, he would otherwise and sooner haue
put hym selfe in endeouour, to salue and pacifie this amou-
rous woud, which so pained them. But as one (who thought
hym selfe so unforntunate and smally fauoured of loue, that
he thought hym to haue made their woundes quite contra-
rie, and otherwise then they were) could never bee in anye
place, but that, thinking on his estate and newe loue, hee
entered into deadly dispaire of hope euer to attaine the
Typpe of his desire. In suchewile, that where he ther was,
to wit in the Forrest (where we leste hym seekyng the vn-
knowen Knight, to reuenge the deathe of his deare frende
Pharisor, accompanied with his Squire *Geliaste*) he so con-
uerted the care he had of finding hym into cogitations and
contemplations of her passing beautie, whom aboue all o-
thers he praised and esteemed, that in steede of holdyng the
right waie out of the Forrest, to finde a place to embaycke
hym selfe, and go into some straunge Contrie, he came to-
wardes Constantynople which he thought to be most farre
of: whereof the Squire aduised, who was somewhat more
soconde, then the day before, asked hym, whether he would,
or if he thought to finde his Enemye in the Cittie, from
whence the daie before he had sworne to separate hym selfe
a farre of, so to shunne the daungerous heate of the fyre,
which

The Hystorie

“ whiche with his flames (as he saied) consumed hym: which
“ flame (saied the Squire) Maister, in steede of flyng theim,
“ you seeke the nearest way to them: wherto as it were, awa-
ked frō a deepe sleepe he aunswered in this wise, not know-
yng where he was. And what? goc we towardes Constantiople: Saie ye not, said Gelaiste, how the hie Towers and
Steeple斯 appeare neere unto vs, and I beleue, if we had a
little more daie light, and helde this pace that we doe, wee
should be there within this hower. Then tournynge bynde
towardes the Village where that same Euening Pharisor
and Ergoferant were lodged, they tooke their Innes at an
other house hard by, wherre they were as well vsed as could
bee: for the Hoste knowyng by the Squire Gelaiste, that
that was the knight which had slain the Giauntes at Rocke
Alpine, enforced hym selfe with all his power to make him
the best chere he could imagine. And after Supper he tolde
hym how one of the Giauntes, whiche hee had vanquished,
came that wate that same daie, enquiring after a Knighte
whiche caried a Crosse of Gouerde in his shielde, and tooke
the high wate to the Forrest: whiche made the Youthe sup-
pose, him to haue found the Corps of Pharisor, and caried ic
awaile to be buried. But (said the man holdyng on his tale)
I, for his wonderous greatnes I had not beene afraid to
speake to hym, I should quicklie haue shewed hym the wate,
how he might sone haue ouertaken the Knight whiche hee
soughed for, for that night he lodged here so chaffed and an-
grie, that hee did nothing but sweare and blasphem the
Maestrie Emperiall, satyng that, although hee should dye
with twentie thousande the beste Knightes of his lande,
whiche all were at his commaundement, yet would hee bee
reuenged of y outrage which the Emperour had done him)
for, the envy I had to him for his wordes, and maledictions
whiche intyme to come might (as hee pretended anoye vs:
but the greate feare I had to see this man so greate and
speakyng so bigge, made mee to tremble at the sounde of
his

of Gerileon. fol.85.

his boyce, I durst not speake any word thereof. The Youtch,,
hearing al this tale of the Host, aunswere him thus: True,,
ly Sir, this Knight muste needes bee of a wicked and per,,
uerse Nature, so to raile at an Emperour, the beste and,,
most vertuous that can be. For he is most euill, wicked, and,,
enemy of all vertue, whiche wch noughty wordes and dee,,
des so offendeth and hurteth them whiche cherishe and em,,
brace it: and if I knewe where to finde that Knight, whiche,,
so backbiteth the vertuous Emperour, I promise you I,,
would never rest till I had taken vengeaunce of these out,,
rages, and of a certaine other iniurie whiche he hath done,,
mee. I will shew you the waies(sated the Host) how you may,,
soone ouertake hym if you were as well horsed as hee, but,,
if you haue no better a Horse then I see you to haue, you can,,
never attain hym: for by my life I never saw horse so good,,
nor so faire as his. And if hee haue holden on his pace still,,
since he departed, I assure you he is a greate waie hence by,,
this time. I hope (aunswere the Youch) that if you shew me,,
the right way whiche he hath taken, that if he chalce to staine,,
in any place, it maie bee my good lucke to happen on hym,,
how well horsed so euer he be, or els his horse shall die for ic:,,
his horse (say I) because that whiche he rideth on, is myne,,
which with my Harnesse was stollen from me by a Knight,,
whom he slew to haue them. But if I once happen to catch,,
hym, I hope he shal not enioye them long, but pate me for þ,,
salarie & vsage thereof, with also the allowage of my horse,,
at greace blowes with the Speare and his owne Sworde:,,
wherfore I pray you, doe so much for me, as to doe that you,,
saide. Sir Knight, aunswere the Host, care ye not therof:,,
for without request thereto, suche desire haue I, that the,,
Emperour were reuenged of the flaundrous wretch, that,,
I will not faile to bring you to Morowre into the greace,,
hye waie, whiche leadeth unto Byzance, a litle Village not,,
far of hence: whicher I thinke he is gone to take shippynge,,
into Gangle, as hee saied he would: and if you doe your dili,,

P.S. gence

The Hystorie

“ gence to ouertake hym (as ye saye ye will) I am sure that
“ betweene this and that place, you may doe it easely. But se-
“ yng it is now late, I counsaile you to go and take your rest
“ for this Nignt, that to Morrowe you maye bryng to passe
“ your pretended purpose as luckelie as I would wishe you.
After the man of the Houle had made this promise to the
Youth to set hym in the ready wate wherein he might ouer-
take the knyght, of whom he thought himself more inturied
then he was, to thintent he might arise betymes in the Morn-
yng, he went therupō straightrawies to slepe in a faire bed,
whiche the Host had purposely prepared for hym, where we
let hym rest (for chaunge of matter) till the next morrowe.

How Grandowyne Kyng of Hybernia and Cornewaille,

Vnde to the Nigromantian Mynofoll, addressed a
greate and puissaunt Armie to reuenge the death of
his two Children Margarde and Vaspazell, whom
King Floridamant had slain: And how goyng towardes Lōdon, he was encoūtred by a little Flete of chri-
stians, the Captayne whereof were the Princes Ferr-
rand of Norwaie, & Grandilaor of Swethland, which
came to giue the onset on the Painims: with whom
thei ioyned Battle in suche sort, that many there died.

The xix. Chapter.



Dyasmuche (noble Loydes and Ladies) as I am sure you are not ignozaunte, that as there is no meate, what sweete or delicate taste so euer it haue, were it Ambrosia it self, the foode of the Gods, (as Poetes faine) which with too long vsage semeth not to vs yokesom and unsauerie: In like maner beeleeue I, that there is no discourse or Hystorie, bee it neuer so sweete or delectable, but beeing too longe continued without intermission or successe of some

Some chaunge or other nouell chaunce : which (as it were a
newe kind of meate) may be agreeable to the hearers eares,
or delite of the readers , may be dulsome or pleasaunt vnto
you. For this cause knowyng that whiche I will recite vnto
you in these Chapter's followyng , shall be no lesse dele-
table vnto you, nor smell worse to your cōtentations, then
the valiauncies of the Youth of the Fairies , from whence
we wander a little , to bringe hym in hereafter with more
pleasure, delectation and astonishment of haughtie feates of
Armes, then you haue heretofore heard, if you haue the pa-
ciece I deme you to haue: hopyng that the generositie and
singuler bountie of your splices, will not refuse to holde on
to reade this myne Historie, set forth and put in light: both
for greate pleasure and profit, that you may haue therein.
I will as now therefore recompt vnto you, (albeit brieslie
and succinctly as is possible, that whiche chaunced and hap-
pened to the valiaunce and invincible Kyng Floridamant of
greace Britaine, and chieslie in the selfe same time that his
Sonne the Youth of the Fairies was in Grece in pursuit
of the unmatchable and valiant unknownen Knight, accor-
ding to the veritie of the Commentaries of our auncient Gas-
Larx, whiche in the same maner also maketh therof mentio.
You ought therefore to knowe, that after the deliueraunce
of this illustrious Lorde from the Traitor Minofoll En-
chaunted Physons, as in the Chapters precedente I haue
moste brieslie declared vnto you: after hee was arived into
his countrie (as is aforesaid) he went into the greene Isle
with a greate Hoast of armed men, and so dispeopled it and
destroyed al the Townes and braue buildynges, that there
were not left aliue any of the race or house of the traitorous
Enchaunter: who beeynge apprehended, was also putte to
the point of the Sworde: amongst whom also was slaine
twoo Children of the Kynges of Cornewaille, Uncle to the
Traitor Minofoll, the one of whom (if ye marke it well)
was slaine by the Kyng Floridamant , at the same time that

The Hystorie

the Damozell (whiche afterwarde was hanged on a Tree,
led hym traiterously into the Prison of the red Castell, as
yon haue heretofore heard: and then when his Horse failed
hym in the Forrest, when hee had heard the crie of the Da-
mozell complaining, hee encountred hym by chaunce, as he
was goyng to London to wooke some Traisour: and this
same was called *Mawgard*. The other was then slain in the
greene Isle (where he was Lord and Maister through the
death of his Cosine) by the Prince *Habart* of *Scotlande*,
against whom hee would haue defended hymselfe: and this
had to name *Vaspazell* the prouide: whereat the Kinge of
Cornewaille, beyng vexed without measure, hauyng heard
so dolefull Newes, and angrie at kinge *Floridamant* more
then afore, althoough he long had borne hym mortall hate,
determined & resolued now to reuenge the death of his two
Sonnes, with the destruction of those of his kinne. And to
doe this (as one that was riche both in substance and fren-
des, & of alliaunce to greate Lordes and Princes, and who
also was stout of person & valiaunt as was possible, he sent
Ambassadours to his frendes on all sides: and chiesly to
two Sonnes which he had yet lefte: one of the which, was
king of *Corse*, named *Angrofols* the Cruel, who failed not to
come to reuenge the death of his Brethren and Parentes,
with a Nauie of a hundred and fower score Shippes, and
sixtie Galleys well furnished: wherin he brought aboute
thirty thousande footemen, and tenne thousande horsemen
braue, and in good order: and moreouer hee brought with
these, Syre Giauntes, the greatest and biggest that euer
were seene since the memorie of man: who onelie serued
hym for men of Armes, to garde his person: yea with them
was hee better guarded, then any other Kyng, althoough
he had sixe hundred horsemen in his companie. And for this
cause was he of his Neighbours and borderers so renow-
med & feared, that none (were he neuer so puissaunce) durst
once offer to do hym the least iniury in the world, althoough
for

for his greate cruelty and tyrannie to his neighbours, many had iust cause so to doe. And besides this, he was so valiant of his person, that fewe there were at that tyme in the wold, which in corporall force, dexterite and skill in Armes, might or could surpass hym: for through his valiancie and prowesse, he had with a small power, broughte vnder his obeisance, the Isle of Corse, and hauing expelled kynge Pollinestor, who had married Kinge Belligent his Sister of Gawle, who was true possessor and owner of the said Island, he maried perforce a daughter of his, so to couer his tyranny, & to insinuate hymself the better into the peoples grace and fauour: of the most parte wherof (as one fauoured and loued) hee was Kinge peaceably, as a Riche and Righte Lord. Yet neuerthelesse, not like his other yonger brother, who by his graund force and extreeme prowesse, was become King of the Iles Fortunate, whiche are beyond the furthest parces of Mauritayne Westwarde, and are at this daie called Canaries, because they abound in Dogges of all sortes. This same king called Brandissant, who in valour and prowesse exceeded far all other knighthes, hauyng hard the pittifull tydinges, whiche king Grandowyne his Father had sent hym, of the death of his Brethren Mawgard and Vaspazel, whiche were slaine by kyng Floridamant, incited with an extreeme pricke of reuengement, staied but a while after his brother: but went w^t an Army of an hundred thousand footemen, and sower & twentie thousande horsemen, to inuade great Britaine, with such a fury, that in every place where hee passed or came, there was no Toune, Castle nor House, were it neuer so greate, whiche was not by hym destroyed, yea to the first foundation: neither men, women, nor little Infauntes were there, what soever, that could escape the pearcing blades of his Gensdarmes and Souldiers: who all the waie as they wente, made bothe Earthe and Water tremble at there presence: such hauocke made they, deming all their owne alreadie. For the saied Brandissant kinge of

The Hystorie

Canaries, had with hym fower puissaunte kynges, Pap-
nims, his Glassalles, which all were Brethren and the moste
strong and monstrous that euer Nature bred. For firste of
all, the youngest of theim, whiche was kyng of Ombrione na-
med Sallazart, was so strong and puissaunte, that in cloße
Campe, he once slewen fower Huige Giauntes, and a Mon-
ster whiche was engendred by one of those Giauntes, cal-
led Astigard: The Effigie of whom hee bare Pictured
in his shield, all murthered by his handes in a field of Sy-
nople: having the rest of his furniture and harnesse wrought
and polished the gallantest that might be seene, and moun-
ted vpon a braue Courser of Araby, whiche ran like Swal-
lowe, swifte in flight: This selowe seemed (beyng thus ar-
med) the brauest knight in the worlde. Although in deede
he was the moste deformed and foulest that could bee.

For firste, he was so greate, that he by halfe exceeded the
bulgare and common proportion of other menne: his hap-
ples of his heade as blacke as a coale: neither was his Face
any whitte fairer: wherein were twoo eyes that shinyng
as well by night as by daie, would haue made the stoutest a-
fraid: hauyng his bowes a foote of good measure broade.
The Nose a spanne long or moxe, the Mouthe stretchyng
to his Eares, whiche with length laie on his Shoulders,
like a Bloodhounde. And moxeouer he had twoo long Tus-
kes or Teeth, sharpe as a Pike, whiche raught fully halfe a
Foote out of his Mouthe: his Chinne was like the reste,
whereon appeared no moxe haire then on a Cowe taile: for
like a stinkyng Goate he had it hangyng to his girdlestead.
As for the reste, he was the finest Youth of the worlde: but
that he was great Bealied, and bigge Shouldred, cariyng
a Mounchine (as it were) vpon his backe. Notwithstan-
dynge this, he was so valiaunt, that there were fewe, no not
one (but Kyng Brandissant) whiche in ought that appertai-
ned to corporall force, or warlike affaires, were like un-
to hym, as you shall moxe understande hereafter. Conse-
quencie

quentlie his brother Zorlot Kyng of the Isle Niuarie, which
was no lesse faire then Salazard, was mightie and strong,
that with one blowe of his Launce, (in a certaine Bat-
taile) he slew chirtie Cantabrians. And no worse (to make
horte) were the kynges of the Iles Innomes their brethren,
Cambarel and Phagotrof, whiche had in their Bande aboute
thirtie thousande menne, bothe fo^r foote and Ho^rse. And so
this Thundering warriour Brandissant beeynge thus ap-
pointed, in a marueilous braue araye, and equipage, passed
into Great Britaine, there wastyng and destroyng all, till
thei came to the Countree of Cornewaile, where he founde
his father Grandowine, whiche for his parte did his deuour,
to gather menne from all partes of his Dominions, to
reuenge the death of his twoo sonnes. In whose companie
was Agrafolt, Kyng of Cantabria, Marlon and Barant
Kyng of the Isle of Caribe, who a while afore was arived
with greate puissaunce of men, to helpe Kyng Grandowyne:
whose ioyes I can not well tell you, when he saw his sonne
Brandissant come to succour hym, with suche a multitude
of valiaunte Soldiours and Gensdarmes: and chieslie when
he tolde hym, of the greate wastle whiche he had made com-
myng throught Great Britaigne. Assuryng you, sir (saied
he) that had it not been for the desire I had to see you, and
my brother Agrafolt, with all these good Lordes, and some
others, who by me requested, promised, lassane faile, to come
shortely to succour you, this wretched Kyng of greate
Britaigne had not hadde by this tyme either Castell or
Toun to defende hymselfe in. I trusste good Sonne (saied
Kyng Grandowyne) that we shall bee therre tyme enough by
the helpe of the Goddes, to disherice and ruinate hym both,
with the issuision of his owne bloud, and also of all those who
shall be so hardye as to make to vs anye resistaunce. And I
swearē by all our gods, that if he be (as I hope he shal) once
taken by vs, I will make hym die a worser death then euer
that cruell Tyrant of the Agrigentines, Phalaris did, or could
imagine.

The Hystorie

“ imagine to vexe and torment his people : neither shall that
“ glutton Dorian of Spaigne escape wiche lesse rewarde, who
“ at all assayes is his aider and fellow. For it behoueth vs to
“ put all his Realme to fyre and sworde, if wee were once
“ dispatched of this Floridamant heere, which shall be shortly
“ as I hope. And that Ferrand also king of Nozwaie, who is
“ his vassalle: neither hym of Denmarke, nor that other of
“ Swetlande whiche will succour hym, shall also escape
“ our sharpe and trenchant Blades. Truely my Leige(then
saied Agrofolt the cruell) if once we might exterminate all
“ these : it is expedient for vs also to destroye that ould Ty-
“ raunt of Gaul: for he maintaineth that glutton Palisenor,
“ my Godfather, who hoping of his aide, manaceth to expell
“ mee out of my Realme : saiyng that by righe it is his. Give
“ mee leauue on my behalfe (saied wicked Marion Kyng of
“ Cantabria) for as for my part I hould my self assured, that
“ that presumptuous Kyng of Spaine, whiche so often sen-
“ deth Pyrates & Robbers into my Dominions(who do me
“ more annoyes, then one would thinke) shall not haue long
“ continuance, neither shall he agaist vs wokе any great
“ resistaunce. For one night will I giue hym suche Alarne,
“ pursuyng hym vpon the Spurres so neere, þ neither he nor
“ none of his shall haue any leisure to flee & sauē them selues.
Assuredly that shal do very wel, Sir Marton, said the fierce
King Barant of Caribe: for then may you Crowne your self
King of all Spaigne, and Sir Grandowyne kyng of greate
Britayne. Also good Prince Agrofolt shal haue the Realme
of Gaul for his parte, and you) saied Brandissant whiche are
a moste puissaunte Lord with kyng Salazard, Zorcor, and
Phagotroffe shal haue the Realmes of Scotlande, Norway
Swetlande and Denmarke. But the Prince Cambarell
and I, will then goe to Constantinople, where wee will
make our selues Lodes. Thus these Prodigious Mon-
sters of Nature, spake and talked amongst hem selues,
beeyng assembled in kyng Grandowynes Pallace of Cornewayle

wasse : hauyng more confidence in the force and puissaunce
of their bodies (whiche in no wise lacked) then in the Di-
uine prouidence, without whiche noe humaine enterprise
can ever come to good issue . And I can assure you , that if
the soueraigne creatour and gouernour of all thinges, had
not by his infinite bountie and goodnes , preserued and su-
stained the parte of the noble and valiaunt Christian Prin-
ces, they had then beene in daunger to haue loste their liues
and to haue their Realmes and poore Subiectes destroied,
vndoubtedly. For these cursed Paynims were the most pu-
saunce and valiauntest personages , that euer Hystorie made
mention of , and had with them moze then twoo hundred
thousand footemen , & a hundred thousand bhaue knyghtes ,
besides the Giauntes whiche I tolde you of , whose onely
force was able for a whole Army: and there were the strōg
Brunissant, Angrofolt, Salazard, and his brethren, which had
either their Bodies or Harnesse in suchwise enchaunted ,
that neither Pron. nor Steele could pearce or hurte theim :
and therwith endewed with suche force ; that nothyng was
able to abyde it. And to encrease their number also , came
there a while after to their helpe kyng Tawladas the wo-
thy knight of the Isle of Canadu, and fierce Guydard of Bac-
cales , with either of theim an Armie of moze then thirtie
thousande fightryng men, mounted on myghtie Horses and
Elephantcs whiche caried every one five or sixe men well
furnished with shot in the little Castles of wood, which that
had vpon their backes : whiche two in force and prouesse
were nothyng lesse then Brunissant & Sallizard, whose ally-
aunce and confederaucie to haue, they came to this match ,
and also to trie the force and valiauncie of kyng Florida-
mant and his Bryptishe knyghtes, whether they were corre-
spondent to the fame that went vpon them or naye.

And on this wise this puissaunt armie becyng assembled
in Cornewaile, and the Countrie thereaboutes, they made
not long delaie , but embarked theym selues to passe into

18.101
The Hystorie

greate Brittaine : and in what magnificent order you shall
understande . First there wente before, eightie greate Gal-
leis wandryng on the mayne Sea with Sealecloatches
spread, and aboundaunce of Dares, marchyng like a Tem-
peste: neither met they any vessel on the Seas, whosoeuer,
but ther drowned it: and they went ten and ten in a Rancke
Quadrangle wise , and not one swifter any whit then ano-
ther. Also there were fistene great Carrickes, which went
before the Gallies about a mile or lesser: and at every side of
the Quadrangle Galley fleette, was also ten , wherein were
the *Camarbrians*, who at this daie are called *Biskynnes*, a
People neere to Spaine , who were conducted therethen by
their Kyng *Martyn*, whiche in Seamatters was moske
skilfull , and was ordained Admirall generall, of all the
Army by the other kynges apoyntmentes: from whom he
was separated, and came in a Galley, which marched alone
amongst the foresaied fleette, and a greate Troupe of Sop-
pies, Boates and Brigandines, whiche in number amoun-
ted to moe then sixe score , whiche followed after: whiche
Galley exceeded all the rest in bignes, in beauty & in bryng
aray: for the men of the same were all arayde in Cassockes
and Bonnets of Veluet, half greene & halfe blewe, rowyng
the Dares: to eueris one of whiche (beeyng fifty on a side
painted all red) there were ten set , all tyed by the Legges
with great Chaynes of siluer. And moreset the couerture
of the place where was *Martyns Chamber*, was also all of
Siluer, wrought with spangles and leauers of Golde, and
Azure most rich & sumptuous , on the top wherof appered
a mightie shakynge Ensigne, wherin was painted a great
Sea Monster , muche resemblyng a Crocodile all mailed
with Scales of greene, and the Ensigne was blewe: about
the which was written in Golden Letters this same Verse
of satyng, Vpon the Seas I all destroye: for none I meete may
mee annoye . And a little lower was written *Martyn*, the
Terror of the Waues : neither was there place in all this
Galley

Galley aswell appon the Hatches, as Roapes and Cordes
whiche held the Mast: but that there was suche a like Ensi-
gne(either little or greare) tyed, to every one of which was
fastened an infinite number of Cimbales, and Siluer Bel-
les, whiche shaken with the Wind, yelde a merueilous
sweete harmony.

After this magnificent Galley, that went without either
rule or certaine order, dispersed here and there aboute the
winges of the Sea fleet, these foresaied sixe and twentie
Foyles, Galliottes, Gallions, and Brigantines: In the
greatest of the whiche Foyles, were the kynges Tauladas
of Canada, and Guyard of Baccalos, with their Horsemen,
and the Elephances whiche thei had brought, beeynge in
thirtie greate Shippes, whiche followed after marueilou-
sly well ordered, with saile displaied, & top and top gallant
braue to beholde: wherin was a great noyce of Drummes,
Sutes, Trumpettes, and other instrumentes of Warre, so-
lemne & hideous to behold. Finally, after all these foresaied
vesselles, came a Fleete of two hundred Shippes or more,
and some Barkes, which marched all in order triangled, in
forefronce of the whiche, thre was one Ship, farre grea-
ter and fairer then the reste, whiche cutte the Seas with
suche celericie and swiftenesse, as was possible to beholde:
and therein were kyng Grandowine, Angrasorte, Brunissant,
Barant, Salazard, Zorlos and their brethien Cambarel and
Phagatrophe, whiche hastened to aduertise kyng Marton, to
take order how to draw a little sideward, to assaile a certain
Fleete of shippes, whiche they had discryed in the maine sea,
goyng streight to greate Britaigne there to take Hauen,
and so to make them capaines, if thei would not yelde to bee
on his parte. But as thei were thus busied to gine order
hereunto, and to set their chynges in a readinesse, beholde
they were all astonisched on the sodaine, by the Carrickes,
& Galleis which went still before, of whō they were met, &
the folkes therein assaulted, & many putte to death by an o-

The Hystorie

ther Fleet (whiche came a bywaie with a marueilous cer-
tericie) whose number was aboue fiftie five, or sixtie bhaue
Shippes of Warre: whiche fiercelie enteryng here and
there amidde the greate troupe of Galleis (whereof thei o-
uerthewe and burned many with Fires artificiall, and o-
ther Instrumentes of Warre) thei made at the firste a mar-
ueilous Martydome of the accursed Paynims therein.
For they were not a whit afraied of this encounter: which
thyng the Admirall Marion seyng, caused incontinentlie
his great Galley to prepare her self with diligēce, to come
and aide at this pinch, & also a number of the Foistes & Bala-
gandines whiche came after: all which with sped hastened
to assault the litle fleet. When the Capitanne of the same,
(foreseyng what daunger he was in) would faine haue reti-
red and fled, but that the other fleete, who (as I saide before,
was firste discouered of Paynims, ioyned powers thereto:
and so reculyng and musteryng somewhat together, they
behaued them selues so well, that more then twentie of the
Paynims Foystes and Galleis were sounke and burned.
For in the Shipp whiche was Admiralle, there were
two bhaue Knights, whiche commaunded all the Armie:
who set in araye with their swordes in their handes, and
bhasen shieldes prest for their better defence, raged in their
enterprise, and with furie cououred the bellye of the God-
desse *Thetis*, with þ bloud of those accursed Paynims. Nay,
they caught none, but they sente hym to seeke hymselfe in
the bottom of the waues, where he might drinke his laste,
or els to tast of death on the Hatches: whiche thing the val-
liaunt Kyng Marion seyng (who raged to see so manie of
his men slaine by two knyghtes) addressed his Galley that
waie, & ioyning with one of the Knyghtes, who bare in his
shielde a Dragon of Azure, in a field of Sables, for cogni-
zaunce, was there þ most daungerous Skirmishe betwene
them that euer was heard of. For Kyng Marion (who was
exceedyng strong) thinkyng with his fierce lookes to haue
feared

fraied and made flee those twoo doughtie Captaynes, was
 muche astonished when he founde hymselfe so matched with
 the one, þ in all his life he never had bene so troubled, in so
 muche that he thought there to haue lost his life presently:
 such were the blowes whiche he receiued at the knightes
 handes of the Dragon, þ had it not bene for the enchaunted
 Helmet whiche he beare, it had beene donbefull whether he
 shold haue retorne sound as he did. But because hee was
 armed w Harnesse wholy so enchaunted, that neither sword
 nor other weapon whatsoeuer, could pearce or cut, hee re-
 fisted well more, then an hower against his aduersarie, who
 also defended hymself valiauntlie as (God knowes) he had
 neede: for both of them were strong, valiaunte and skilfull
 in Armes. True it is, that if Kyng Marton exceeded hym
 somewhat in force, hee againe counterueiled it in agilitie
 and nimblenes of bodie, and in craft of Skirmishyng, as
 wel appeared by him in this mutual combat. But the other
 to counterueile all that, gaue hym now and then such grene
 atteinces, that the red bloud began alreadie in some places
 to runne doun his body: but for al that, never made he any
 semblaunce of griefe, to condemne hym self of Cowardyse.
 But as the Beare and the wilde Boare beyng enuenomed
 one against another, stryue still with rage to pull eche other
 in peeces: so these twoo valiaunt Champions did all their
 powers to depryue eche other of life, although the one had
 small aduaantage of the other: whiche made them maruell
 much of their owne prowesses, still payng eche other as the
 Smith with an heauy Hammer doth his Anvylle often: and
 as the one his Harnesse, so did the others nimblenes keepe
 them both aliue long.

And thus endured the Combate a greate whille, duryng
 whiche, the Knight of the Dragon his fellowe rushed in a-
 mongst the Paynims (of whom he made a merueilous but-
 cherie and slaughter) and with his Meyny behaued himself
 so well, that many were slaine, and a multitude drowaned,

The Hystorie

neither coaped he wiche any, but hee losse either Leg, Arme, shoulder, Necke, or some parte of his body, alwaies hauyng a soueraine care to saue his owne Ships notwithstanding whereunto after a while all his men reentered by his commaundement. For seeing the rest of the aduersaries Vessells at hande, whiche Kyng Grandowyne and his twoo Sonnes led (whom if they had caried, they had bene all discomfited) they hoyst vp sailes, and moued Dares to deparce with all speede, contenting them selues wiche the honour which they had gotten in resisting so many with so smal a power, to the great damage and ruine of their Enemies, and yet loosing a very few of their owne party: neither any vessell, but that wherein was the knight of the Dragon, who whiles hys men prepared them selues to gayne the Nocht, kepee Mar-ton plaine still: to whom (seeyng then readie to deparce) hee gaue such a blowe with his Sworde on the head, that hee made hym fall on his knees, so astonished, that he knew not where he was: and then taking a little Boate, whiche was swiftilie furnished with Sailes and Mariners, hee rctyred with the rest of his Armie awaite from his aduersaries, leauyng them agreeded at this encountrie: who not knowyng how to be rewenged, set fire on that great shipp, whom hee had leste them. For as it was better, they thought it good rather to retyre wiche that gottē victory, then with daunger to attend the comyng of the rest of the Army, to their great suerthowe and confusion: a thyng rather to be reputed rashenes of them, then hardines.

Although the Paynims thought verely to haue gotten the honour through their flight. Who taking their voyage towarde grete Brittayne, tooke Porte a while after, at the Cittie of London, where as then laye the good Kyng Floridamant: who with a greate Troupe of his Barons and Lordes wente to welcome those twoo valiaunt Knights, which so had vsed the Paynims: whom he a farre of knewe (by the ensignes hanged on the Mastes of their shippes) to be

be the valiaunte Kynge Ferrande of Nozwaie, and worthy Grandilaor, his Neuewe, whom not long afore Floridamant had made crowned King of Swethelande, at the discease of Antizilianaſ Father, whom hee had married, who were come from their kingdomes, sence soꝝ by Kynge Floridamant, in order as is afore saied, to gaine hym succour. For you must note, that the Noble kyng of greate Brittaine being certified of the waste and iniurie whiche kyng Brandissant had made, in goyng through his Realme, perceiued well that hee went toward his Father the kyng of Coñewayle, who prepared against hym a myghtie Hoaste, to reuenge the death of his two other Children, whom hee had put to death. And beyng aduertized of the greate force and puissaunce wherewich he came against hym. And doubting hym selfe not able to resiste so greate an Armie had sente Ambassadours on all sides to the kinges his Neighbours, to desire their ayde, and chiesly to these two his Subiectes, who failed not herein to come: And by the waye knowyng that the Paynims were not farre from them, they had parred their Armie in twoo, to embushe and assaile theym (as you haue afore heard) to their great ruine and deacie. Who a while after theim, came to take Lande before the Cittie of London: from whence after a long and a sharpe Combate, they were expulſed and driven backe, and so constrained to take Auncour elsewhere, aboue a Myle from the Cittie, where Maugre the Christians they descended: as I meane to shewe you in the firſte Chapter of my nexte booke, God willing, with the rest of their Battels and diſcomfitures.

But as now you muſt accorde to graunt mee ſome reſte, to the ende that with moſe grace and excellecie I maye recompce it vnto you, then I haue done anie thing heretofore. For my Head now is amazed, my Penne worne, and my Hande ſo benomme,

That if I haue not now ſome reſt;

I never can atchiue the reſt.

The

The Hystorie

The Pagans hauing laide siege to the Citie of London, determined with one conisent, to roote out all Christians vniuersally : and for the winnyng of the Citie, they elected the Kynges Guitarde of Baccaleos and *Angrofols*, who tooke with hym the twoo mightie Giauntes *Brizard*, and *Rogement*: and with mayne force entred into the Citie, where *Guytard*, bearded by Kyng *Floridamant*, was forced to retire backe in more haste then hee had entred, not without the slaughter of all his people: wherevpon *Angrofolt* being encontered by Kynge *Floridamant*, after Combate enduring a long season, was taken Prisoner, with the stout Saracen *Micophron*.

The xx. Chapter.



Dw(my noble Lordes, and fauourable Dames) since that my spirites haue reposed them selues, and the instrumentes of my speach are recreated, euен as of your fauors ye haue deigned, I entende in prosecutyng my purpose, to recounte unto you the residue, as yet unrehearsed, wherewnto I crave your attentiuue eares: For somuche as I am assured, that in the rehearsall thereof, your mindes shall receive singular contentation, euен as my studies are bent to guide you into the possession of suche passyng delightes, as ensue. Mention was partly made afore, howe after that the Pagans: who at their firste landyng would haue entered, and harboured their nauie directly against the City of London, by the valour of the Kynges *Floridamant*, *Ferrand* of *Norway*, and *Grandilaor* the hardie, and by the courage of the valiaunte Knights resiant and sotournyng there, no lessemansfullie, then

then bloudily beaten backe : bloudily I saye , for that with
greate slaughter and occision of their people, they were en-
forced to take landing at an other place difficult and unto-
warde enough , lyng more then a Myle distaunte from the
Citiie: where immediacly vpon their ariuall, without anie
stoppe or impedimente (because the Inhabitauntes of the
Citiie perceived theim selues not of sufficient force to pur-
sue or assaile theim any further) they descended from their
Vesselles, and went a Lande , with a greate noyse and Tin-
tinare of Trompets , Shalmes , Drummes , Fifes , and
other like melodious Instrumentes of Warre : at sounde
wherof , the Pagans that first tooke Lande , did nought els
but daunce and triumphe iolily , whiche brauerie of theirs
endured but for a shorte season . For presently after that the
kynges Grandowin , Angrafof , Brandissant , and the rest with
their Souldiers and all their traine , whom they had con-
ducted to assaulte the Citiie of London (whiche they imagi-
ned to take within three or fower daies at the mosse) were
descended from their Shippes , they marched on : meanyng
to encampe in a faire and verie wnde plaine , which as then
was situate not farre from the Citiie . In the middell wher-
of , a manne mought haue seen the stately and magnificente
Pauillions of the mighty Heathenishe Kynges , and the o-
thers , whiche resembled an high Groue , enuironed with a
multitude of lopte Trees , emong whiche there was erected
one , farre surmountyng all the reste in length and breadch ,
whiche serued the vse of these kynges , in steede of an huige
Halle , to consulte and deliberate , touchyng their affaires :
the same as a sumptuous and braue Castle with Towers ,
was hemde in with Pauillions of the Kynges *Angrafof* ,
and *Brandissant* , on bothe sides : wherevnto did closely ad-
ioyne on the one parte , to the lodgyng of *Brandissant* , the
Pauillions of kyng Salazard , Zorlor , Cambarel , and Phago-
trot : on the other appeared the lodgynges richely besene , of
the puissaunt Tanladas kyng of Canada , and Guitarde lord

The Hystorie

of the Isle of Baccaleos, together with those of the old kyng Grandowin, Barant, and Marton the strong of Cantabrie. All whiche on the morrowe, as sone as their whole traine and furniture, were sette in order, failed not to assemble them selues in the greate Pavillion, to take deliberation and aduise, what were beste to bee doen, wherevnto all the princi-pall knyghtes, that is to saie, Dukes, Erles, and Barons were called, of whom there was a greate number. The old kyng Grandowin, for that by occasion of hym the assemblie was made, sittynge on the highest Seate of all, whiche was verie sumptuouslie prepared and adornd, hauyng his twoo Sonnes Angraful on the right, and Brandissant on the left hande, and all the other kynges, with Lordes of greate power, stoure and braue knyghtes, aboue sixe hundred, begann to speake vnto them in this maner.

" Hoste mighetie, and excellente Kynges, Princes, Du-
" kes, Erles, Barons, and knyghtes, if the greeuous sorowe,
" and extreme heauiness, wherewich, through the remem-
" brance of the losse and death of my twoo Sonnes, my hart
" is burdened and tormented, had stirred vp my courage alone,
" with an inflamed desire to take suche straunge and dreadfull
" vengeaunce, as vnneth hath been heard of, vpon the murde-
" rer of them, and of the chief parte of my lignage: certes I
" would haue had no slender regard, as one loche to seme im-
" poyncture vpys your Maiesties, excellencies, & honours, in
" requiryng your aides, and succours in this encerplice: well
" weighing that my merite to you wardes, is of no suche co-
" sequence, that of so many mightie Lordes, as in this assem-
" blie are presente, to offer and aduenture their gooddes and
" liues, vpon the hazarde of Fortune, and of death also, shoulde
" emploie them selues in this attempte for my sake: seyng
" that for the accomplishment of the same, I my self am of po-
" wer sufficiente, with the aide of these my twoo sonnes, who
" are no lesse bounde to take vehement indignation, at the
" shedyng of their blood and myne, then myne owne self. But
" sith

sith the case so standes, that the deuotion of the Goddes, and
the desire to augmente our Lawe and Religion , ought to
embolden and inspire our courages, with an vnaccustomed
valiauncie, and prouoke our stomackes with bloudie rage,
not onely to byng to better ruine, the mooste traicerous and
mischeneuous Tiraunte, that euer did weare Troune, hym I
meane of Greate Britaine , but also wholie to extermine
and roote out this cursed offyng of Christians , who in
comparison of vs, that hold in subiection, *Asia, Afrique*, and
the greater parte of *Europe*, are but an handfull : and yet if
wee suffer them to reigne in peace, thei maie receiue suche
encrease, that (as it happeneth not selidome , the lesser au-
gmente, and the greater decrease) in conclusion thei maye
dispossesse, and depriue vs of our Countries , and Domini-
ons: the Inhabitauntes whereof, to the greate dishonour of
our God Mahomet, thei will infecte with the contagion of
their false beliefe, to our singuler dammage , and confusson
of our Successours. For whiche cause, perceiving that the
destruction of this accursed kyng Floridamant of Greate
Britaigne, who is one of their propes and pillars of their
Faiche , is an acte in mync opinion, verie necessarie for me
to achieue, it semes also to bee a verie good and easie ente-
raunce , by meanes of your assistance, into the residue of
our exploites remainyng behinde, that is by our pruwesse,
to deface and abolishe the vniuersall race, and rable of Chi-
stians: whose wealth and Seignoires, wee maie afterwar-
des diuide emong our selues, as in our Judgements shall
seeme reasonable. Behold, ye noble wightes, the chief occa-
sion that hath moued me to assemble so many powers at one
instant, boorrowing also your aides, the whiche as I thinke
should encourage you muche more , then if the enterprize
were onely attempted in my behalfe: consideryng that it co-
cerneth and toucheth you well nigh, so muche as my self.
Wherfore, this is myne advise, that wee prosecute earne-
stly our enterprise undertaken, and begonne: since that wee

A.a.ij. are

The Hystorie

" are here readie to put the same in execution, vnde plie the T-
" ron whiles it is hotte, and that withoute delaie, if you iudge
" it beste to enter forcibly, or by other practizes into the citee,
" whiche in respecte of the goodly buildynges and monume-
" tes therof, we will neither burne nor raze, but it shall suffice
" that we onely put to the edge of the Sworde all the people,
" whiche wee shall finde within the same, as well the small,
" as greate, bothe Women and Children, murderyng and
" slayng theim in suche sorte, that there shall not reste one to
" carry tidynges: and to hym that can take the kyng Florida-
" man alive, and hym deliuer into our handes to bee doen to
" vile and ignominious death, we promise to giue in lieu of
" his desercte twoo thousande Talentes, and so to aduaunce
" his estate, that he maye accompte hym self a fortunate per-
" sone: but the Dames and Gentlewomen, such as are en-
" dowed with singuler beautie shall bee sauued, to serue for our
" share, and to bee disposed after our likyng.

Immediateli after this Saracen had belched out these
woordes out of his malicious mouthe, and stinkyng sto-
macke, all the other Pagan kynges saied with one voice,
that he had spoken passing well, and that it behoued hym
to deliberate soorthwith, to whiche of theim the charge of
scalyng the walles, and entryng the Citee shold bee com-
mitted: with whom shold an hundred thousande foocemen
accompaignie, to make shorze woorke in the assaulte, and to
open the gates the soner, that the kynges and knigthes re-
mainyng without the walles, might enter at their ease
without resistance. And after the matter was throughlie
cauased emong theim, the puissaunt kyng Guitard of Bac-
caleos was appointed to vndertake the charge. Whereat
Angrafole was greatly aggrieved, because he especially de-
sired to haue beene the firste, that shold haue entered the
Citee, to the intencce he mought violate, and deflower the
faire Ladie Polydamie: of whose beautie (albe it she had not
attained to the age of fourtie yeres) he had heard such ex-
cedyng

reedyng commendacions, that her matche was never seene,,
in any Heathenishe lande. And as the valiaunte kyng Guitard was in preparing, and orderyng the armie vnder his conducte, for the accomplishing of his infortunace attempt, he spake these woordes in effecte, to the Painime kynges, who had chosen Guitard for the takyng of the Cittie:

My Lordes (as he) so much as kyng Guitard, of whose promesse and bountie I doubt not, may not without great labour and trauaile, attchieue the mightie charge giuen to hym, because that (as I beleue there is none of you thereof ignoraunce) chei with whom wee haue to deale (I meane these knighthes of Grete Britaigne, with whom this Cittie in great nuber is furnished, as you mought understand, when of late we purposed to haue taken lande) are such, as there are very fewe knighthes in the wold, of greater prouesse and valiauncie then chei are: it therefore semeth unto me (submitting alwaies my selfe to better counsaill) that as well for the supportation of the saied Lord of Baccaloos, as also for the speedie dispatche of that wee haue consulted vpon, wee ought to electe some other emongest vs to assite him; and if you thinke good that my selfe be he, the charge I will undertake with a good will, and the reason that mocht mee to be so desirous to deale therin, I wil tell you in bries.

This night passed, as I soundly slept, me thought, I was entered into the Cittie, and made great chere and feasting with king Floridamant, and the twelue couragious knighthes of his house: dreamyng (as me seemed) that you pressed into the Hall and then as many as could, leapt out at the windowes: the residue were by you cut in peeces, wherupon I awaked: This Dreame animateth mee, and hath caused me to conceiue a strong imagination, that y euentes shall so fall out: notwithstanding there be some which say, that dreames are but illusioes & mockeries. For it hath bene in my hearyng oftentimes affirmed, that greate Princes

The Hystorie

“ haue dreamed of thinges that afterward haue happened:
“ but the Dreames of meane people are nougnt els but va-
“ nities,because our Goddes passe not greatly for them , nei-
“ ther doe reueale to them the foreshewinges of chaunces to
“ come: but the apparitions that great Kinges do conceiue,
“ are of an other sorte, & I am assured that not wout some ve-
“ hement foretelling of that which shal fortune, the God Ma-
“ hometh,hach made me dreame of these matters . The other
Kinges perciuyng by the tale of the cruell *Angrofols*, how
greatly he coueted and longed to fight, graunted to his de-
maunde without deniall , howbeit the myghtie Kyng *Tau-
ladas of Canadas* was somewhat discontented thereat, mis-
trusting in his conceiyr, that one of those twoo sterne war-
riers would without peraduencure , dispatche Kyng *Flori-
damant* of his life, wheras he hymself upon no other occasi-
on,then how he mighe haue triall of the renouned prowesse
of the saied King, did so soone intermedle in the same war:
but for that he needed not to haue taken thought:for in dea-
ling with king *Floridamant*, both he and his complices also
were like to haue their handes full.

While the affaires amoung the Pagans stooode in these
termes , there entered secretly into their Campe a Spie,
whom Kyng *Floridamant* had purposely sent to marke and
learne all the dyystes and policies of the enemies : hee be-
ing disguised,like a Pioner,so handled the matter, by mea-
nes of his skilfulness in all Sarazyn languages,that he un-
derstoode the whole summe of their doings afore declared:
whereupon he retourned into the Cittie unperceiued of
any, makynge report thereof , to the noble *Floridamant*, and
other the kinges and knyghtes of his Court: who without
uttering any signe of doubt, whiche neverthelesse they had
closely conceiued in their mindes, knowing the forces and
powers of their enemies to be so greate:but rather demea-
ning their coultaunces correspondēt to their hauly hear-
tes, shewed themselues to their Souldiers, whom they had
muste-

mustered out of al partes, both within the City & without: And with a sufficient number of them, marched with al expedition towaards those partes of the walles, whiche sustai- ned the fearest assauice of their enemies: who by the helpe of infinite corded Ladders, wherewith the cranes of the Walles were on eueryc side pestered, hauyng entered into the Cittie in greate multitudes, beganne alreadie to kill & slaye all that came in their waye, without anye resistaunce, vntill the commyng of the valiaunce Prince Floridamant, beyng accompaniued with the kinges Ferrand of Norwaike, Grandiaor of Swechelande, and Marcibell of Denmarke, who then was freshly arived, to the succour of his Lorde, with a good number of hardie knyghtes, and men of Ar- mes. All whiche well mounted, marched together in one Troupe againste the enemie, garded on the one side with Duke Candior of Normandie, and his Sonne Don Silvan, Earle of Flaunders, who was a verie young knyght, but well esteemed for Feates of Armes. On the other side were the litle Acciall of Surrey, Spy Herald, the courageous knyght Melchior of Irelande, Ramelin, Druic, and Frangard Earle of Durford, who confrontyng this outragious multitude of Sarazins, murderyng the Christians with- out mercie, charged those Butcherly Dogges, boide of all humanicie, with suche furie, that at that firste encounter, happenyng within a broad place far within the Cittie, you mought haue seene the Members, as the Armes, Legges, Heades, and brest partes of the Pagans, fye thicke in the ayre like Flies in the Sunne shire: whiche these valiaunce Knights dismembred in suche wise, that those Rakehelles that had begonne to make their Brauadoes along the City, were never so astoniied in their liues: so that feelyng their ouerlong tariaunce, to tourne to their hinderaunce, and seyng their vnablenes to make anye surcher resistaunce, they were constrained to retourne the waie they had passed before, and yet they could not behaue them selues so well in

the

The Hystorie

the retynge, but that thre thousand fell dounie slake dead
in the place. Wherof the kyng of *Baccalos*, (as hee stode
on the walles encouraging his men to clyme vp apace, be-
yng aduertized,) descended from thence, and came inconti-
nuallly with a crutte bande of his stoutest knyghtes, among
whom there was one braue Sarazin, of myghtie strength,
named *Micopbron*, that was his Cousin. As soone as he ap-
prooched nere the place, and sawe what hauocke the Chri-
stians made of the Pagans, hee was almost mad with rage
and spye, to see his people so disordred and slaine: whom he
met fleeing, being chased by the knyghtes aboue named: and
with maine force entered into the Croude on foote as hee
was, being followed of his people: who viewynge his man-
hoode, tooke heart agrace, laying about them with all their
miche, in such wise, that if God had not taken compassion
upon the poore Christians, there had not one escaped that
day: for he encountered nothing in that place, whiche hee
did not hewe in peeces: next vnto hym the fierce Sarazin
Micopbron made such a terrible slaughter and spoyle of the
poore Christians, that none therewere, that durst withstand
hym, for feare lest they shold be sente to their long homes.
And assuredly they had ouercome the whole Cittie, if that
the renoumed kyng *Floridamant*, the valiaunt *Ferrande* of
Norway and *Don Murcibel* of *Denmarke*, (whose strenght
by Gods diuine power, I beleue was then redoubled) had
not in tyme hasted to the succour of their people. But these
noble Princes beholding this miserable spectacle, vsed
wonderfull diligence and celericie, and bare them selues so
valiaunely, that king *Floridamant* coaping with the king of
Baccalos, *Don Ferrand* with *Mycopbron* the strong, and
Murcibel among the other Pagans, smeyng before and
behinde, and on both sides, compelled them after an harde
and sharpe conflict, to tourne their backes, and shewe their
heeles. For kyng *Floridamant* surprised with furie, and
chased in fighetyng, caught kyng *Ghward* with all his force,
such

of Gerileon.

fol. 97.

suche a violent stroake, that he made his Helmet ffe of his head, and had slaine him without doubt, if his people had not the more speedely succoured hym: but perceiving his head unarmed, he retayzed hastedly to the place from whence hee came, hauyng receiued no other hurt but, that, by the violence of the blowe, his eyes so sparkled, that for a quarter of an hower after, he could see verie little at all: and it is to be conjectured, that had it not bene for þ goodnes of his Armour, being that whiche Achilles did weare, at the bataile of Troy, when he slew the valiaunt Hector, doubtles he had not bene left aliue: howbeit he was afterward much vexed, yea & ready to runne out of his wittes, for that parte of the Armour whiche he had losse, hauyng wone them from the strong Bagellan, king of Ithaca, by Combate enduring thre daisies continually: whiche Bagellan received them from his Auncestour Ulysses, who after the deach of Achilles, was made owner of them.

But now to goe forward in the recitall of the rest of this hideous hurle burlie, betwene the Paimins and the Christians; you shall understande, that after kyng Guitard with the losse of his armour, was so escaped out of the tumulte, myghtie Mycopbron his cousin, whom he had left behinde in the Briers, with muche adoe and difficultie, sustainted the hunte of his enemies, beyng welnigh overcome by the assaillers of hym: for he was so roughly charged and pursued, by the thre Christian kynges, that notwithstanding his manfull and couragious defence, hee was taken Prisoner. For he had once before brought kyng Ferrand of Norwaike, to so harde an exgent, so all his excellent p:owesse, that he had not long endured against hym, had not the kynges, Floridamant and Murbibell afforded their aides: who chargyng the Pagans as aforesaid, forced hym to yelde himself prisoner, & in respect of his valiauncie, slew hym as they did his people, who were entered into þ citte: of whch he made suche haucke, that not one remained unslaine, to carry newes of

Bb.5. the

The Hystorie

the defeating of his fellowe souldours.

Thus you may perceiue how noblie the thre Christian Kynges in those partes behaued hem selues, from midday, till the Sunne was welnigh sette: It remaineth that we make rehearsal, what was done on the other side against cruell Angrofolt and those monstrous Giauntes, Brisard and Rogemont, by the residue of the twelue valiaunte knyghtes of Greate Britaigne: who beeynge in other quarters of the Citee, and hearyng the noise and Alarme of their enemies, who had made enteraunce in greate multitudes, vnder conduete of the same Angrofolt, accompanied with these twoo Giauntes, marched on in marueilous haste therewarde, beeynge assyld by the moxe parte of the garrisons of the Citee, with luche diligence and dexteritie, that the Pagans being not farre entered into the Citee, were by them oupled to recoule vnto the very walles, not without great losse and slaughter. Now as the Giauntes were entred with Angrofolt their Lord, he seeing the resistaunce that they of the Citee made, commaunded these twoo Butcherlie Giauntes to succour their menne: hym self onely takynge wai to the kinges Pallace, to leaze vpon his desired prayere beyng the Lady Polydamie, who as then kepte her self within her Chamber, lamentyng and weepyng, with noble Queene Belizonne her Mother, who made pitifull moane, wenyng her to call ruine to be at hand. Now as that cruell Tyrant of Corfica approched nere the Pallace, to his misaduenture, he was breasted by the kynges Floridament, Ferrand, and Murcibell: who having happily dispatched them selues of Guitard, hastened to other quarters of the Citee, where they knewe the Paintims were entered. Soz he was no soner espied, but he was presently charged verie rudely, by these thre valiant Christian Champions with dince of Swoorde: whiche althoough he receiued with greate assaynce, yet the matche vnegally made, he could not endure long, but was compelled to courne his backe, fleyng towar-

of Gerileon. fol.98.

des the place where his menne soughe : but beeyng agaste
with the violence of the strokis he had sustaineid in the en-
counter, he missed of the righthe wais. Foozebwith kyng Flo-
ridamant meanyng to pursue hym , and to fighte with hym
hande to hande, commaunded the kynges Ferrand, and Mur-
cibell, to halle them to the aide of his knyghtes , and in the
pursuite of the Pagan (as one that was moxe nimble and
actiu) demeaned hym self so well , that in a narrowe Lane,
where the other rested to breathe hymself, he ouertooke him:
who seeyng none other to followe sauе the kyng , reioysed
greatly , and takynge his sworde in his hande , and his
shield on his arme, attened, bauanting on foote to receiue
the onsett, howbeit to his no small preiudice. For the kyng
closelyp bucklyng with hym , assailed hym with suche force
and violence , that had not his Enchaunted Armes serued
hym at that pinc, he shold haue been soone dispartched, but
by the helpe of them , he continued the fighthe more then an
houer and an halfe , wherein suche manhoode was shewed
by the assailant and defendant, that it was harde to discerne
who had the better or worse, till at laste twoo houers after
the Battaille begonne drawynge on , the Pagan because of
his feeblenesse and fainenesse, beeyng unable to endure any
longer, fell doune in a laune on the Earth : the Kyng part-
ly taking the aduauncage, although hee was wiered in the
Combatte, set his foote vpon his brest , and hauyng taken
of his Helmet, entended to haue slaine hym, when the other
who had recovered hym selfe , cried : O Noble Kyng , for
Gods sake spare my life, and at this instaunce extende I be-
seeche you , that exceeding mercie and clemencie ; where-
with I haue hearde you alwaies remoumed : since that by
my deach you shall not purchase so greate honour , hauyng
now no meanes to defende my selfe. The king the mirroure
of courtesie & pitie, shewed himself towards this cruell Ty-
raunt so mercifull, that hee did hym no other harme, saue
only made hym his Prisoner , wherewth the Pagan was

Bb.ij. partly

The Hystorie

partly comforted. The chief conductor of the Pagans, having rendered hymselfe vanquished, was by Kyng Floridamant brought unarm'd, to the place where the Christians and Heathen people fiercely fought: so that they issue to what side the victorie was more likely to eucline, seemed uncertaine and doubtfull: when as kyng Floridamant, who made more accoynct of the life of his men, then of the death of a thousand of his foes, on the one side, and Angrafolk his Prisoner on the other side, caused cheym to surceasse. The force of the Heathenishe rested principally in Brizard and Regemont the Gauntes, who made greate spoule and haueocke among the Christians, and had taken vp and caried awaie vnder their Armes (as though they had beene Chickens or Tayons) fower of the couragious Knyghtes of great Britaine, to witte Don Acciall of Durrep, & Ramelius of the Isle of Wight by Brizard, Melchior of Irelande and the Earle of Durford, by the fell Regiment: Who notwithstanding were rendered, and the Pagans chieftaines compelled to retyre with those fewe that remained on liue: for of fiftie thousande Pagans that by scalynge the walles, had entered: scarce twentie thousande were left one liue: and of Christians abouee fifteene thousande were founde dead, as well of Women and Chilfmen, as of men of base condition, that with Weapons, Stones, and such like, ranne vpon their enemies. Howbeit no knyght of name was slaine, sauing the valiant Herald, who was found among the preesse almost smothered, and the young Don Silvan of Flaunders, who had all that daie fought against the cruell Gaunt Regemont, and by a wounde whiche he receiueth in his Arme, lost so muche bloud, that if he had not been helped in cynde, he had beene in daunger to be lost: but as it fortuned, hee suffered no other hurte, sauing the paine of his wound, whiche shortly after was cured, as we finde in the auncient Commentaries of Gallarx the Historiographer: who for that he surceaseth to entreate any further, couchyng these affaires
betweene

betweene the Pagans and Britaines, we also will leue of, so a certain tyme, and courne our talke to the most deligh-
tful and straunge aduentures of the Youch of the Fairies:
shewyng you onely by the way, that the Pagans hauing re-
tired themselves for certaine daies: king Floridamant gaue
his Prisoners *Angra-folt* and *Mycophron* very sumptuous
entertainement, accordaning as he afore had dñeamed.

Howe the Youthe of the Fairies set hymselfe on Sea, to
pursue the vñknownen Knight: where after he had a
long season sustained the violence of a terrible Tem-
pest, he discouered a man swimmynge vpō the Placke
of a shippe, and in daunger of drownyng, who by
hym beyng saued, as they were there discoursing of
their aduentures, thei were assailed by Rouers on the
Sea, whom they slew all sauynge one.

The. xi. Chapter.



He continuall unrest, and perplexitie,
enwrapping their heartes, whom the
blinde Archet hath attainted with his
enuenomed shaftes, not only depryued
them of the sensiblie easse & release of most
daintie blandes, tournyng their swee-
tenesse into bitternes, that it is impos-
sible for them to receive sufficient for the nourishmente of
thei bodies, and conseruation of their health, seeyng them-
selues for the most parte led with sondrie conceiptes & bayne
imaginacions of the beauty of such as in their mindes thei
make their Idolls: but also occupying their heade in con-
templation of thole phantasies, seldome can they take any
reste: as by the example of the Youche of the Fairies evi-
dencie appeareth. Who durwyng the tyme that the affaires
of greate Britayne continued in the state afore mentioned
in Grece, spared no payne nor erkuaille, to the incence hee

The Hystorie

mought attaine to the estimation and renounie of a worship
& valiaunc knight : the better to purchase the good grace &
fauour of his new Dame, whose excellencie in all respectes
had so rauished his sences, that in the Inne where we leste
hym last, he could neither take repast nor repose. Wherefore
allone as the obscuricie of the night beganne to dyninisse,
secyng neither his minde nor body by concourse of his pas-
sionate pangues and amourous cogitations , nor disposed
to quietnes, he leapeþ out of bed, norwicheſtadynge the mor-
ning was very cloudie & darker: when as his Esquier , who
slepte, not knowyng with what conceipe his maister was
eickeled, likewise left his bed, and makyng hymselfe readie,
sayled not forthwith to hasten vnto the stable, there to saddle
and biidle his Horſe, and to prepare all other thinges re-
quisite for his Maister when he shold take Horſe : dispat-
chyng the same with suche diligence , that nothyng lacked
when his Maister bryng armed came. Who accompanied
with his Hoste , departed with all speede , to ouertake the
person whiche he sought for: traualyng so fast, that before
the dawnyng of the daie, they arrived at Byzance. Where
takynge leaue of his Hoſte, whom he satisfid to his conten-
tation, he embarked hym selfe in a ſhippe well furnished,
whom he founde preſt to make voyage towardes Fraunce:
for that bee havyng enquired of the unknownen knight, the
Maister of the ſhippe had tolde hym , that the Cuenyng be-
fore the ſame knight had taken ſhippe in a Barcke, of a
Companiou of his , that ſailed theretherwarde : whereof bee
was not a little ioyfull, commaundyng the ſeaman with
all expedition, to hoife vp the Hailes and away: ſo that they
passed along the meane ſean, the ſpace of twoo daies and
a night : at the expiration whereof the Maister in the mor-
ning, perceiving the ſunne to appeare redde of coulour, and
the windes to blowe bluſteryngly, alteryng the calmenes
of the weather, and ſilnes of the waues, into a troublouſe
and tempeſtuous rage, would haue declinde out of the de-
termis.

of Gerileon. fol. 100.

termined course, and bente his shipp towardes a little I-
lande, lying far distaunt from the ready way into Fraunce.
The YOUTH of the Fairies suspectyng no lesse, gaue hym in
charge both earnestly & halfe displeasauntly, that he shoulde
saile directly on. For (quoth he) fall backe, fall edge, no hay
to hard, no, noz feare of death, during the safetie of this Ves-
sell, shall inforce mee to chaunge my purpose. The discrete
Wailler knowyng the will of the Knight to bee constancie
settled to abyde the vttermoste that the wrathfull Skies
moughth threaten, or frowarde fortune procure, as one con-
tentedes suffer pacientlie whatsoeuer distresse it woulde
please the almighty to thowte hym in, would not gainsay
hym: for the small experiance whiche so shorrt time could af-
ford him of his woxhines, bosity, & comely qualties, wher-
with the YOUTH was adorneed, had perswaded hym so to de-
dicace his mynde to please and serue hym, that he woulde in
no wise withstande his commaundement: howbeit, because
he saw the imminent ioperdie of their lues nowe approa-
ching, for to assayle whether by any persuasions hee moughth
tourne his opinion, he tolde hym þ he had perceiued certain
vſuall signes, betokenyng alwaies some mischaunce and
violent tempest, as the high and sodaine towring of the He-
ron: whiche, Syr (saierþ hee) maketh mee to mistruste that
with no assayling, but with greate daunger of oure ruine,
wee maye passe any further. Moreouer the continuall lea-
ping of the Dolphins aboue water, which I espie, abasheth
& warneth mee to auoyde the perillous ourage of þ winds
and weather. Wherfore I thinke it verie expedient, that
we sojourne in some surer harbour for a season, waiting for
the appeasing of the Seas and ceassing of the Tempest: for
so muche as the same beeyng asswaged, wee way dispatche
furher in a day, þe we may duryng this rage in a moneth:
for in doing of such thinges, as you know, we must tary the
opportunie of þ season. Notwithstanding, sith your pleasure
is, that wee shal saile on, I will not disobay your will, albe-

The Hystorie

it we shall never (if I be not deceived) accomplish the same without some lamentable accident: aduertising you, that if God extende not his mercy to your succour, the ende of our dayes is at hande. Howbeit, soz all these wordes and many a teare besides, whiche fell from the good Dreamans eyes, who trembled for feare, seyng the Wauers like myghtie Mountaines, offeryng to ouerwhelme them, and the Deas readie to swallow vp their vessell, yet would not the YOUTH relēt, nor was any whit abashed, saiyng that either aliue or dead, he would passe further. In þ meane while the maister of the shippē tourned the Sailes towardes the Region of Fraunce: wherevpon the chief winde with suche violence rushed against þ maine Paste, that it had like to haue ouer-thrown the Vessell: but partly by the timely ceasing of the boisterous blaste, partly by the incredible strength of the YOUTH of the Fairies: who embassing it in his Armes, held it with all his myght, from leaning towardes the Deas, the shippē and all was recovered. Norwiche standyng the Tempest surceased not, but concinued so cruell and forcible, that it mought haue been compared to that, wherin the Trojan Chieftaine Aeneas, was tourmoyled when þ wrathful Jove (incensed against the remaines of Troy) had requested Aeneas, to giue to his most fierce windes the raynes to torment hym. For their vessell was with such outrage tossed to and fro, vppe and doun, and almost vsidedoun, winde shaken and weather beaten, that when I consider of it, I am forced to stande in admiration, wonderyng howe it could escape so horriblie a ioperdy without shipwracke: for sometymes the Wauers like Mountaines lifted them vp aloste, makynge them thinke that they were in ascending into the Cloudes: agaist the shippē fallyng doun betwene the myghtie Wauers as it were in a deepe valley, made them to dread, lest that Hell were openyng to deuour them vp. So that the Mariners and Passengeres abandoning the Tacklinges, began to crie mercie, knowyng no other remedie or rescue from suche

such imminent daunger sawing p̄raier unto God, with such an hearse, as they possesse, who are surprised with the like hazard. Neverthelesse the mercilesse rage of the windes encreasing, Haile and sharpe shouers fell aboundauntly, the Skies were quite overcast, the Ayre wonderfullie darke ned, the darkenes berefte the Sailers of all light, excepte it were that whiche proceedingyng from the twinklyng eyes of the Whales, and Wherlepooles, or els of flashes of ligh tening, intermedled among the stormy Raine, and fozerunning most ghastly and hidous Thunder crackes, and terrible Wherlewindes. But yet all these dreadfull accidents had no power to abate the noble courage or daunte the stoute Stomacke of the worthy and valiaunt Youth of the Fairies, steevally sette in a firme opinion, that all bitterness was sweete, all euill good, and all daunger, disease, and trauaile, to be repose & assured tranquillite in respect of the vncessant, vnasswaged and remediles paine, which his rest les minde suffered by vehemencie of his amorous woundes: for albeit hee did see the greate parte of the Mariners, and the residue in the shipp, shifte out of the same, and commis themseues unto the Shipboate for their safegarde, yet hee not once offered to remoue hymselfe from thence where he was: neither respetyng couerice from the brunt of the tempest, nor reiectyng the unseasonable weather, but accepting either in like parte. Which Tempest cowardes the euening, when the Vessel had all daie runne at random, without go uernement, began to cease, and moderate his rage, the impotunate windes packynge awale, and giuyng place to the comfortable Beames of *Dan Phæbus*, who as then guided his horse, wearie of their daies taske towardes *Thetis* Waues. Now the Youth, who alone staid in the Vessel, with his trustie Esquire, that would not forsake hym in weale or woe, perceiuyng the weather to ware cleare, gate hym out of a Cabin of the Shipp, where he had remained during the Tempest, and mountyng vpon the Hatches, hee

The Hystorie

might espie not farre from his Tessel, the halfe of a ship
sloynge, whiche the tempest had toerne asunder: within the
whiche there was a man almost faintyng, and prest to yelde
his bodie to the mercie of the Waters, whose Waues had
almost ouerwhelmed hym: yet betwixt sinkyng and swim-
myng, he laboured to lenghen his life, without likelihood
of recouerie, if an unhoped hap had not reserved hym from
suche distresse, lyng in the maine Seas, deprived of his na-
turall forces, and distaunce from Lande any wale twentie
Leages: but as hec was in this pligte, a gracious gale of
wind, did drieue the Boord whereon he groueled halfe dead,
towardes the Youtches Tessel: who takyng pitifull com-
passion, with diligente endeuour laboured to saue hym: spa-
ring not to despoyle himselfe, starke naked to leape into the
water, and tying a Coarde of the Shippe about his bodie,
swamme to the other man, and attainingg unto hym, chewe
hym the ende of the same Coarde, whiche he stisly grasped in
his nummed handes: this being done, he swamme again to-
wardes his ship: drawyng the other after hym with muche
adoe: into the which he mounted, & being tyred, listed by the
other beyng hardly handeled and moyled in the salee wa-
ters: who beyng entered, fell doune in a sounde, vomityng
up the water in great aboundaunce, whiche he had gluttet
in, at his Nose and Mouth.

Wherupon the Youth of the Fairies loeyng hym so faire
and so comely a Personage, and gessing by his countenance
that he shold be of some good house, emploedy al diligence
possible, for the safegarde of his life, & taking him & listing
his feete upwarde, with þ helpe of his Esquier, made them
fast to one of the Cables, and hanging his head downewar-
des, he poured out the water into the Sea, whiche remay-
ned in his Stomacke: after beyng recovered from his
swone, hee praled the Youth, that hee would vntie hym, for
he felte no more paine, whiche he delated not to doe, with all
expedition, beyng so glad, as if he had founde the Treasure

of Cræsus, or conquered the Romaine Empire, as well for
 that he longed to vnderstand what he was, as also what for-
 tune had brought hym into that distresse. Whereof hauyng
 demaunded, the other that was so enfeebled and wertied by
 turmoylng in the water, that hee could not easely seche
 breathe, requested hym instantlly, that he would vouchsafe
 hym some restyng place out of hand, and that after he were
 reposed a while, he would recount vnes him his whole case.
 Then the Youche knowyng that hee needed the same, and
 that hee vittered his woordes with muche difficultie, com-
 maunded his Esquier, that he should leade him to his cham-
 ber, and laye him in his owne Bed, wherunto he obeyed in-
 continently: but he was scarce entered, when as the knyght
 seyng the Armes of the Youche, and likewise the Speare
 that laye by his bed syde, staid for a certain season, without
 speaking one worde, (he was surpised with liche astonish-
 ment): afterward tourning hym towarde the Esquier, re-
 garded hym heedfully, and remembred that hee had seene
 him not long afore: & forthwith called to mind who he was:
 howbeit without making semblaunce of any liche thyng,
 he began to bataile hymselfe: and his apparaile (whiles he
 prepared hymselfe to Bed) the Esquier bare into the open
 ayre to die: who failed not to rehearste vnto his Maister,
 touching the countenance and behauour of the man, when
 as he behelde his Armour. Who beyng therfore more de-
 lrous then he was afore, to knowe what he was, hyed hym
 into the Chamber, to common with the Straunger, why-
 les that the shipp without anie Sterneman did runne at
 randon: but at the first entrance, finding hym fast a sleepe, he
 would not awake him as then, vntill midnighe came: when
 he had rested hymselfe a long season, the Youch (who in the
 euening was layde doun by hym, nott disposed to cloase his
 eyes all that parte of the night, by reason of the vnquietnes
 of his thoughtes) heard hym speake in his sleepe thus. Ah
 Madame (saide he) and what will you saye when ye vnder-

The Hystorie

“ stande of the deach of your Knight? After wallowyng from
one side to another, and wauyng his Feete and Handes as
though he would haue swimmmed, he muttered in his dicame
sundry like speeches, and complaintes, whereby the Vouch
who gaue good care, perceived that he was dedicte to the
Vestes of the Patroneuse of Paphos: therfore both so that
hee supposed the man to be troubled in mynde, through the
fearefull obiectes whiche were presented to his inward
tences as hee dreamed, and because his longyng to knowe
what person hee was, did still augmente, iogging the man
• harde with his Elbowe till hee was awaked, saied: Ho, ho,
• Companion! what ayles you? you are further from the wa-
ter then you were yester day, God bee thanked. The man in
his awakyng geuyng a leape (as it were one halfe agast)
was recomorted when he founde hymself in so safe a place;
for in his sleepe hee imagined, that hee was yet in the Sea.
Wherfore reuokyng to memorie the daungerous hazard
from which by the Vouches aide then lying by hym, he was
recovered, hee shewed not hymself displeased for his late
chrustyng of hym, but shrouding hymselfe againe vnder the
couerte of the Bedclothes, began to speake to hym on this
sorte: Soȝ Knight (saied hee) if it seemed not offensiu to
you, I would instantantly request you, to vouchsafe mee one
benefice: assuryng you that I will in any matter concer-
nyng you, auoyde the crime of ingratitude, as well in re-
spect thereof, as also in that you haue bene the onely refuge
and rescue of my liefe, out of those apparant perilles, wher-
in (hopelesse) I was enironed: whiche causeth mee to ac-
compte my selfe so muche bounde and beholding to your
gentlenes, for your unspeakable and exceedingyng merites,
that unsafely I doe acknowledge my owne power, farre,
unable to recompence the slenderest parce of those youre so
high desertes, pe though I doe aduenture my life in the
hazards of innumerable daungers, for the defence and con-
seruation of poures: bowyng furthermore, that you shall re-
quire

quatre nochyng at my handes , whiche gladly I will not occomplishe for your sake, not onely because you haue recoureyed mee from presence death , but also for that youre laminationes and countenaunce alone doe seeme worthy , that so great a Prince as I am , should employe hymselfe for you . Wherfore as you esteeme my wordes true , & my promise to proceede from a faithfull & constaunt heart , I praye you to graunt unto my first request , which I never seemed to deny to any creature liuyng . Verily Sy^r (said the Youth) of the Fairies , you seeme vnto mee so courteous and well spoken , that albeit you were but a meane Knight , and not descended from any royll house , as you haue vicered here , yet would I not once offer to conceale any thing whereof ye shold demande mee : alwaies foreseen , that it resteth in my power to doe : reposing suche confidence in youre good nature and courtesie , that you will not forbeare ne disdaine to shewe the like at myne instance , after that I haue so satisfiied your desire , whiche I request you not to differre : geyng you my woode in faich of a knyght , that you shall require no thing of mee , which (mine honour reserved) I wil not attempere with my whole myte .

I beseech you then (quoth the other) that it would please you to discouer unto mee who you are , and what Fortune hath forced you , being of so young yeres , to wander thus alone amids the Seas , and likewise , where you conquered the Harnesse and faire Speare , whiche yesterdaie at my entrie into this Chamber I did beholde : wherewith as I be leue , you arme your selfe , when occasion offereth or necessitie constraineth so to doe : and the reason which moueth me to be desirous to understand the first of these thre thinges , is to the ende , that I may know the person certainly , unto whom I stande so deepeley indebted , that if I may possibly haue a thousande liues to ieoperde in his defence , when neede shall require , they may in noe wise be spared : wherefore I am againe to desire you to disclose the same to mee .

The Hystorie

“ I promise you (saied the Youch) that since it is so, that you
“ haue prevented mee, by demaundyng that whiche els I had
“ enquired of you, I will not gainesaie your demaunde, ha-
“ uyng a lare cruse, that you will vse the like courtesie to
“ mee. It remaines therefore, that you knowe, that I was
“ boorne in greate Britaine, and beyng ver y young, was nur-
“ sed and trained vp in the Fairie of the Rympe Oziris: it
“ may be that you haue hearde reporte of her, who not long
“ sithence sente me to Constantinople to bee dubbed Knighe by
“ the Emperour there, who of his gracieous inclination re-
“ fused not to doe it: but misfortune who lay in waite euery-
“ where to surprise mee, wolde: alas (sy Knight) I piale you
“ to holde mee excused, if I vete no further of my mishappe,
“ saied hee, sighyng deevely, & that in performance of the pro-
“ mise,whiche I haue made unto you, this shorte declaration
“ may suffice: for if you vnderstande any further of my cala-
“ mities, I doe beleue that you will scarsely refraine poure
“ eyes from Teares, and your hearte from bewaityng of my
“ lameable case. The man whos was more desirous to know
“ where he had recouered those Armes whiche hee had seene
“ the euening before in the Chamber, then to heare of anie
“ chyng els, ceased not verie importunateli to charge hym
“ with his promise, alledgyng many vehement persuasions,
“ to encourage hym thereto: saiyng (as though he had con-
“ tected somewhat of the passions of the Pouche, by his ge-
“ sture and maner of pronouncyng) that if the original of his
“ mishap and grief proceeded of loue, in discouering it to him
“ (as without inconuenience he mought assuredly doe, as to
“ his especiall frende) hee should receiue suche comforde as
“ shoulde yelde hym singuler solace, and if it did arysse of any
“ offence namely against him, he promised with al his power
“ to assist hym in the execution of the reuengemente thereof.
“ Wherupon the Youch (the passages of whose voyce by the
“ course of his sorowes, were burke open) reuised at the re-
“ membrunce of his Dames beautie, rather heauenly then
“ humaine,

humaine, & discoursed to hym a large processe of the aduentures befallyng hym, mentioned afore: not concealing any Tote vntolde: and he had not as yet attained to the ende of his rehearsall, when the dawnyng of the daie bade them to forslake their beds, so that leasne failed the Youch ere hee could declare where he had recouered the Armour.

But settyngh themselves vpon the Puppe of their ship, as obiectes to the glitteryng beames of Dan Phæbus, as hee was addreslyng his tongue, to finishe his rehearsall, by fortune they kenes a Vessel that kmimed the Seas with wonderfull swiftnes, wherin as the same approached neere, thei mought espye two knightes armed at al pointes, who flourishing with their naked swerdes in their handes, and their shieldes vpon their Armes, manaced them more and more. Whereof the Youthe, who was unarmed, at the first blushe abashed, and mistrustyng that they came to encerpise vpon them at suche aduaantage, descended in all hast to his Chamber, where hauyng taken of his Armour the Shielde and Swerde onely; leauyng to his companion, whom he had found in the Seathe rest, to witte, the Copesmate, the headpeece and the Speare, mounted vp vpon the Hatches, where they met with the twoo Archepyrates, who already had to their owne mischiel boorded their Ship. For the former of them both, beyng confronted by the Youch of the Fairies received vpon his Headpeece suche a stroke, that his Head and Bodie was cleaved doun to the Breast, notwithstanding the defence he made with his Shielde, his Helmet and other his Harnesse, whiche preuented not that fatall blowe: not muche vnlike was the mischaunce of his Copesmate, who by his Speare pearced the bodie so violently, that doun fell he into the water starke dead: at sight whereof the two Knightes stode a certayne space, as men amazd eache one at the prowesse of the other: but especial- ly, he who had beene preserued from deach, beholdyng the Youch of the Fairies, with exceeding admiration, to reach
that

The Hyfstorie

that miserable Rouer (whom he had slaine with wonderfull force) the mightiest stroke þ euer hee did see with his eyes: whose Companions but smallis dismayed at the slaughter of their Companions , runnyng out of their Forte in heapes , assailed these two worthy Knights furiously: who receiving their charge with greate assuraunce , made suche hauocke, þ of thirty of them in halfe a quarter of an hower, there remained not past twentie: the halfe of whom bceyng greeuously wounded , they were by sine force compelled to geue ground : parte of whom leapee into the water to sauе themselues , the reste that either thought the water ouer colde , or peraduenture vnable to swimme , fledde to their Ship , addressingyng their Sailes to retourne therther , from whence thei came: but omittynge the expedition requisite in so vrgent necessarie, they were all hewen in peeces , one except bceyng reserved , to vtter what people they were. For these two excellent Knights , whom I may truely terme the most valiaunt & redoubted wightes vnder the Coape of Heauen, as their deedes hereafter , & namely in the seconde and third parte of this Histoirie doe clearly witnessse , after that they were become Maisters of the shipppe, wherein the Pirates had assailed theym , entered therein, meanyng to take Lande with all possible speede , for that the same was furnished with all necessarie thinges, for a Voyage: whereas on the contrarie parte, their other was not, by reason of the violente tempest , and outrage before declared : whiche they did accordingly : where they lighted vppon marueilous aduentures, whiche hereafter you may understande.

How the Pyrate whose lyfe was saued by the Youth of the Fayries , recounted vnto hym the Pedegrewe of the Giaunte Squamell , and of the mighty Nabot, together with the loue betweene the same Squamell and the Lady Lucinde, daughter to the King of high Myria : of whom the Giaunt findyng hymselfe to be despised

despised, did happen ypon a Knight, who bare an enchaunted Cuppe, within whiche who so dranke, whatsouer the drinke were, should become extremely amorous of the person that offered the same; likewise in this last chapter are many notable aduentures comprised.

The xxxij. Chapter.



As the varietie of matters heretofore handled, haue yelded occasion to you my Lordes and Damcs, of no slender solace & recreacie, so I doubt not but that the residue of this wooke which hereafter shall be set to open newe, concerning this Historie, wil suspend your intētive mindes, with the expectation of rarer delights, & delighfuler discourses: and by performance of that which is pretended, satissig poure conceites, with surplusage of pleasaunce intentions. And now to prosecute our purpose, understande ye, that assone as the Pouch of the Fairies had left his Ship, which wandred upon the Sea, without any gouernement, and was entred into that whiche hee had conquered of the Pirates, who had attempted to assaile him, to their damage and better confusion, with the aide of the man, whose life he had deliuered from the daunger of deach, obiectyng hymselfe to perillous hazardes for the others safegarde: for the selfe same person was he, whom he sought for, to the ende that hee might reuenge the supposed deach of his faithfull frende Pharisor, whom he thought to haue beene slaine by hym: beyng Isai sailing vpon the Sea in his verie company, and makyng great speede to ouertake hym, who was no other where but in that Shipp, both to knowe if the Rower whom he had taken, could tell any ridinges of hym, and also to understande who were those Sea Robbers, whom he had slaine, hee did the meane while commaunde that the

Dv.j. same

The Hystorie

same Pirate should bee broughte unto his presence; and ha-
ving questioned with hym concernynge those newes, and
shewed the cognisaunces which the knyght (whom he pur-
sued) bare in his armes, in the hearyng of the same knyght,
wherat he stooode muche amazed and astonisched, perciuing
that he enquired for hym, the Pirate spake and aunswerec
in this wise:

" My Lorde (saide he) as touchyng the Knyght of whom
" you speake, I am to certifie you, that we haue never vnder-
" stoode any newes: true it is, that yesterdaie in the euening,
" when the Tempest that troubled the Seas, was aswaged,
" as we were rouyng from one Coaste to another, searching
" somie piae to enriche vs, as we were accustomed to doe, by
" commaundement of the strong Giant *Squamel*, our Maister
" who is brother to the moste mightie and puissant Knyght
" *Nabor*, of whom there is no doubt, but you haue heard nota-
" ble report (forasmuche as he is the most redoubced Knyght
" for martiall prowesse, living at this day vnder the Sunne)
" we by chaunce encountred vpon the border of the faire Isle,
" whiche lyes not farre hence, belongyng to the saied mar-
" ueilous Giaunt, a Shippe, whiche the surges of the Sea
" had cast towardes shore, beeyng rent and wacked in many
" places. Within the whiche we hearde a greate tramplynge
" and noyse made by a horse, the gallaunteste and goodlyest I
" beleue in the whole world: who with his heeles bounced a-
" gainst the boordes of the ship: whom we dewe forthe, and
" sent hym by one of our people that did leade hym by the bri-
" dle (for ride hym he durst not) to our Lorde *Squamel*, with
" an Harnesse, and Sword so blanc, as possibly might bee,
" whiche we founde there also; and in the Shippe (wherof I
" will tell you) were the cognisaunces whiche you haue de-
" scribed: and I thinke that the Harnesse appertained to the
" Knyght for whom you seeke: whom (norwithstandyng) we
" sawe not, nor knowe where he is become, except he bee a-
" mong an infinite number of drowned bodies that be on the
" shore.

shore. In as muche as you demaund what we are, it seemeth
vnto mee, that by the declaration I haue made you (beyng
a sage and wise Knight, as doth appeare) you may gather
that you require, without any longer processe. But tell mee
(said the Youth) what were those two braue felowes who
firste enterprised to boord our shippes?

The Rouer then aunswered thus: my Lorde, (quoth he),
the man in whom you slew, was our Capitaine, and named
Falsant, not so muche for that he was the mooste doughtie of
our Maister's Subiectes, as for a consideration whiche I
will recounte vnto you, if it like you to geue mee the hea-
ryng. Speake on (said the Youth) and we will giue atten-
tione eare to thy tale, since we haue no other thing to passe a-
way the tyme whichall. Firste then my Lorde, before I par-
ticipate vnto you that whiche I haue promisid, I will re-
ceive so that it stand with your concencement) the pedigree
of the Giaunt *Squamell* my Maister, because it importeth
muche in that matter. Knowe ye therefore, that the meruei-
lous shee Giaunt *Horfelle* (who was of the progenie of the
Triple headed Giant *Geron*, Sonne of *Chrysaores*, who was
slaine by *Hercules*, after the decease of his predecessor *Fer-
ramond*, who had bene Kyng of *Maiorica* and *Minorica*, and
of *Erbusa* in *Spaine*,) beyng in her young yeres, of such de-
tertie & might in feates of armes, that no man in her tyme
was found, that could withstande her force, had not yet ex-
ceeded the age of *xviij.* or *xvij.* yeres, but that shee sup-
posing her selfe of streingth sufficently, to abide all paine
and trauaile whatsoeuer should befall, one day among the
rest, without taking leauue either of *Ferramond* her Spye, or
Garrande her Mother, departed secretly out of he countrey
armed with an vnknowen Armour. Afterwardes hauyng
scoured the Seas a long season, visityng all the Iles and
Regions whiche she mought discouer, where shee lefte be-
hind her triumphant tokens of the victorous conqueste,
whiche she had gained, and of the wonderfull aduentures at-

The Hystorie

chived by her, as many a tyme I haue hearde reported by
theym that were liuyng) whereof a fewe remaine as yet,
did so muche by her daedes and woachines, that she as Con-
queresse entred the *Indies*. Where vnderstanding by bruite
of people, the famous renounis of a kyng of *Gedrosia* de-
scended from the lyne of Kyng *Porus*, that was vanqui-
shed by *Alexander the Greate*, and in knighthly prowesse
far surmountyng the chieffest knight of those daies, passed
therupon into the saied Realme of *Gedrosia* which is boun-
ded with the Riuier *Indus*, from whence the greater parte
of the Regions of the East, doe take their name. Where
(to be briefe) after a long and sharpe conflict, she ouercame
the same kyng, whos was called *Corlorane*, and subdued
and brought vnder her obedience, not onely the Realme of
Gedrosia, but also tourneyng to *Ganges* the Riuier, and the
deserces of *Candia* triumphed of the victorie whiche she ob-
tained against the great *Ham of Sarhay*, in the fardest par-
tes of all the East, enthronizing her self in þ seate royal of
Oriental Scythia, which otherwile is teameed *Tartaria*, ad-
ioynynge to the countrey of *Bactria* neare vnto *Parthia*.
But not contented therewith, whether it be so that as you
knowe, the moxe that some persons abounde in riches, the
greedilier they couet worldly wealth, or so that she desired
to extende the sleight of her renowme further, and yelde a
Testimonie of her hantie and invincible prowesse, to the
unknowen partes of the worlde, she traauailed so farre, that
she attained to the extreme *Confines of Africa*: where
malicious fortune spiryng at her fame, plaide here a tricke
of her waueringnes and incōstancie. Now therfore as sone
as this valiant *Urago* and vanquerelle *Horfelle*, was re-
ceaved into the Region of *Spirhamme*, she wondred greatly to
see the inhabitauntes thereof so little, that sixe of the tallest
that there could be found, being set one vpon another, could
scarle reache vnto her waste: howbeit that hindred not the
blinde *Pigmey Cupide*, to assualte her moxe vehemently, then
any

any her enemies in *Gedrosia*, *Tartaria*, *Parthia*, or any other
 partc whiche she had beene in : who for to surprize her, and
 to giue her to vnderstande, that he was more mightie then
 she, for all her pride and iolitie, although before tyme there
 was none that could daunt her courage, pursued her beyng
 furnished with his Shastes, Bowe, and flamyng brandes
 into that countrie, where by his subtile sleigtes he woun-
 ded her in one of the soundest partes of her entrayles, after
 an other sorte, then she was wounded in the combat, which
 she had with the hardy *Corlorat*. For she was enamoured on
 the king of that countrie, in such sorte, that he could neither
 rest by night, nor employe her mynde by day on other affai-
 res: sauing in the feeding of her affections with those cease-
 lese conceiptes: albeit that this pettie Prince was not past
 thre cubites in height, & had to name *Nabro*: at which thing
Spy, those that haue not tasted the experiance of loue, hea-
 ryng, haue beene greatly astonished: as at a thyng impossi-
 ble: but if they weigh well, that this pretie Archer hauyng
 his eyes overcaste with a blacke Cypresse bande, and his
 eyesight beweade therewith, can not clearely discerne what
 he doeth, after that his scorchyng Shastes, beeyng guided
 as destinie drijves them, are shotte thicke and three folde
 among the multitude of mortall Waightes, hee woun-
 deth the greate as well as the small, and contrariwise, en-
 forcyng the suster to be sometimes rauished with an unlaw-
 full fancie towardes her brother, as *Biblio* the daughter to-
 wardes the Father, as *Mirra*, or the father towardes the
 daughter: I am periwaded, that chaunging their opinions,
 & ceasing their astonishment, they wil not marueile a whit,
 if *Horfelle* that was of unmeasurable greatness, was so rapte
 with the loue of a Pigmean Kyng, in suchemanner, that in
 steede of employing her force against some stout knight or
 Giaunt, or destroying horrible and fell monsters, she helde
 hym company at suche tymes, as he with his manlings
 wente to skirmishe with the Cranes: that were so greuous

The Hystorie

unto them by reason of þ daily battailes, which they fought
with them, that he seemed to bee in no lesse extremite, then
Phineus, by the assaultes of þ soule Harpyies was, so that he
could take no one repast at quiet. Howbeit beyng acquain-
ted as before is shewed with this noble Dame (as was not
vneasy for him to procure, because of her extreme passioñs)
she found her hearte shortly after exempt from these mis-
ries. For one day in an encoanter and skirmishe betweene
the Pygmees and Cranes, this amorous Horfelle, entending
to giue triall with what affection she would aduenture her
selfe in his seruice, and howe muche shee alone exceeded in
micht and mayne, both hym and all his people together, by
her onely presence affrighted so these Maister Byrdes, that
neuer sithence they attempted warre agaist hym, nor as
yet durste approuache the place where the Kyng soiourned.
Upon whiche occasion Nabron considering how muche be-
holding he was to the Dame (whom he honoured, and en-
tained as well as he could) on a certaine day made unto
her an offer of all the Treasures & riches which he enjoyed
in this world: for which the she Giant Horfelle thanked him
humbly, refusing it as she that was muche more abounding
in wealth then he, and his Treasures were farre vnsit and
disagreeyng from the Medicine applicable to her Maladie,
whiche she felte day and night, to reue her of all delight and
contentacion. Wherfore syng the Wash (to passe unto the
purpose whiche she pretended)readie beaten, she discouered
at a certaine tyme her grief: & beyng alone in the Chamber
of the Kyng Nabron, did so coll hym and kisse hym, and vsed
such other wanton daliaunces, þ the little dandiprat recei-
uyng in good part the fortune offered, not willing to refuse
the amitie of the Dame, for feare that he should be accom-
pted a discourseous or sotthish person, made no conscience of
paule at the matter, but lustily mounted vpon this Wash-
esse, to bewe her throughtly, without further procelle: for
she was beautifull and of a good grace. And either of them
found

found such sweete taste in this newe spoyte, that hauyng renewed the Combate often times, the faire she Giant *Horfelle*, at the ende of ffeue monethes after the fashion of the *Pigmees* was deliuered of a faire Childe: about a foure monethes after that, shee brought soorth another, whom nine monethes she had conceiued and borne according as the order of nature requireth: the one of them was named *Nabor*, and this is he who is famous throughout all the world, beyng endued with such exceeding force and marueilous hardines, that his pierre liueth not this daye on the Earthe. This man in regarde of his hardines is the chieffest knight in þ Court of the king of *Thracia*, who long ago sailing towardes the *Indies*, arrived by fortune in the Realme of *Sphantamye*: and there finding *Nabor*, beeing then a Childe, but strong and sturdie as possible might be in tender age, howbeit of so great stature, as at this presence hee is (for he is scarcely thre Cubites in height,) taking hym awaie, priuily caried hym into his Countrey, where he hath caused him to be nourished and iustructed with such curiositie and diligence, and likewise to bee trained vp in feates of Armes so carefully, that in ffeine by reason of his expertnes in Martzial affaires, & worshynesse of the saied *Nabor*, he is so feared and redoubted, that in *Europe* is no king that dare attempt to doe him any annoyance. But now to retourne to my purpose, & to the ende, that I stray not frō the path that guides me to þ summe of my discourse: it foloweth, that the other childe of the shē Giant *Horfelle*, and of *Nabron* the dwarfe, was herein unlike and contrary to his Brother *Nabor*: for he was so huge, that in Childbirthe his mother died, & is at this time moste huge & monstrous in size, and pieresles for force and powesse: he is named *Squamel*: whose seruaunt I was, & also euery of them þ were slaine by you, who also is Lord and Ruler of the faire Isle, the most fruitfull and pleasant place that is situate in all this Sea, whiche he conquered by the meanes whiche I will tell you. You are to note

The Hystorie

note, that after his nativitie, beyng as then but a little one
in comparison of the hugenes of his body, at this instant
he incurred such fortune as his Brother had done before
hym: for he was also stolne awaie by certayn Marchaun-
tes, who traueilynge into *Indie*, were by fortune driven to
those, in the confines of his Fathers Dominions, from
whence they caried hym awaie, and sithence soulde hym to
the Kyng of higher *Mysia*, for a greate Passe of Money:
who likewise gaue order that he shold bee vourtured and
brought vp honourably: & gane hym for my Esquire, beyng
as yet very young to serue his daughter, who was the most
accomplished Lady in all perfection of beautie, that coulde
be found, and was named *Lucinda*. Of this Dame, the yong
Giant was enamoured, beyng now come to the age where-
in the seruent heat of loue beginneth to augmene, and that
so exceedingly, that his lively and ruddie colour tourned
to pale and wan looks: his bodie became leane and feeble,
throughe wante of sustinaunce, he eschued all companie, and
chused to liue solitarie. But all in vaine suffered hee those
tormentes and perplexities in respect of the squeamishnes
of his disdainesfull Dame, who to counteruaile his hoate
loue, because of the greate stature and extraordinarie pro-
portion of his lymmes, was so scornefully despised and ab-
iectly esteemed by her, as if hee had beene the basest of her
householde seruauntes. Wherevpon his restlesse thoughtes
did continually so vex hym, that either vnwillyng or
unable to recant his Religion, I meane to swarue from
the seruice of the Sainct to whom hee had vowed all reue-
rence and adoration, one daie it came into his fantasie, to
require the Kyng his Lorde to graunte hym the order of
Knighthooode. The King who knewe that he was extracted
from Royall linage, as the Marchauntes that had soulde
him did ensourme his Maestey, gauesaid not that motion
of his, consideryng therewichall, that his seruice mought
stande hym in greate neede, by meanes of his strenght and
migh-

mightines incomparable. But immediatlie after hee was
dubbed with that degree, hee abode not long there, but set
hym selfe in queste of straunge aduentures, whereof he ho-
nourably accheued so many, that at this daye he is reputed
one of the oddest Knights vppon the face of the whole
earth: as also his woxhines, meriteth no lesse reputation:
for encountring his brother *Nabor*, by chaunce vpon a day,
he fought against hym hande to hand, with suche furie, that
their Combate endured a wholle daye vntill the euening.
When as eache of them (amazed at the valiaunce of the o-
ther, hauyng never as yet found any wight, that long could
withstand them) entered into questionyng one of the other,
concernyng the place of their birth, and what they were: so
that hauyng recounted their fortunes, as they sometymes
had hearde tolde by suche as nourished them, they knewe
themselues to bee brethren: and dooynge awaie all debate,
entertained eache other, with an other kinde of greetynge
then all the day before they had done. Afterwardes iourne-
yng both together, they were seperated, I knowe not by
what aduenture, but in suche sorte, that the Giaunt (the
same of whose prowesse was spread ouer all the Circuite
of the world) came vnto the kyng of higher *Mysia*, where
he was somewhat welcomed by his Ladye, who was glad
of suche a one for her Knighe. And feedyng hymselfe with
the conceipe of good happe, for that the Princesse had caste
certain glaunces towardes him, he tooke vpon hym at last,
the boldnes to discouer his loue vnto her: who cutting of
his suite with a short and sharpe aunswete, compelled hym
as then to desisse frō his enterpris: neverthelesse his kin-
dled and secret ire, burning at length into open and fiueret
flames, incollerably, & continually vexing him, made hym to
hazard his speache once more, to assayle if he could mollifie
her indurate brest, with the compassion of his miserie: but
the Dame persistyng obstinately in her accustomed maner,
aunswerte hym with the like denial as she had done afore:
howbeit not sauced with such bitter tautes: which broughte

The Hystorie

the Giaunt into conceipte, that her untractable rigour and selfwill beganne somewhat to mitigate. Wherefore espynng fit oportunitie for the renuyng of his suite, he findeth meanes to haue accesse vnto her, being alone in her Chamber where cuteryng into communication, hee discourses vnto her, a faire and Courtly Tale: whereof he had prouided hymself afore hande, concerningng his extreme passions: setting it forth to the uttermost, in wordes, boyce, countenance and gesture, concludyng euery sentence with such sighing, that the scozefull Dame seemed partly to relent, renderynge hym an aunswere tolerable inough. For (quoth she,) I can not persuade my self, that your affections are so feruent as you (though fainedly) haue here expressed, sayng that you haue not as yet aduentured your selfe in any attempt, deseruing my fauour: but if for my loue you will not shynke to enterprize one Combate at my appoyntment, I will not sticke to accepte you for my Knight and freude: so that you worthely attchiue the same. The Giaunt exceeding ioyfull of so wished an aunswere, saied, that shee should comande him nothyng (were it never so difficulte and uneasie) but that in hope of her good grace, he would byng it to passe. Maray then (saied the Dame) you are to goe to morrowe to the castle of Melande, where you must figh against all them that you shal finde therin: and if you recourne from thence victorios, then you shall bee he that may dispose of mee according to your owne will. For I haue bowed, that no person shall purchase the graunt of my good will, nor enioye the fruites of my loue, but onely he that shal accoplishe that act. These wordes did cast the Giant into his dumpes, especially for that he had charged his owne shoulders with so troublesome and heauite a burden: for it behoued hym to Combate with more then a Million of Deuils, who were enclosed in an old ruinous castle, beyng inhabitable by reason thereof, beyng there set by the Inchauntmentes of an old Sozeresse named Melande: and to chasse the out it was impossible for any, sauyng for hym that surpassed all other knyghtes.

of Gerileon. fol. 110.

Knights in force and prowesse. So it was norwithstan-
dyng, that the Giaunt purposing with hymselfe, that a spee-
die and praiseworthy death, was to bee preferred before a
languishyng and unhappy life (suche as he endured,) fayled
not to put in execution the commaundement of his Dame.
And did so muche by his worshynes and courage, that hee
defeated the Charmes of the Enchaunteresse, and draue
from thence the Deuilles: who daily raised vp an horrible
Tempest and vproare in the Castle: after departyng from
thence, a victorious conquerour, he hasted to his Dame: re-
quiring her to perfourme her promise. She vnderstanding
thereof, and forced to her extremities, settelld her wittes to
the inuencion of some mischivous practize: wherby the Gi-
auntes daie might bee abridged. Wherefore, albeit at the
first her ouwarde countenaunce descrid the inwarde mo-
tions of her spicfull hearte, yet to the entente shee mought
the more certaintly entrapp hym unware, she entertained
hym courteously inough, and looking foorth at one of the
casementes of her chāber windowe, that stode ouer against
a parke, whercia the kyng her Father had caused a greate
multitude of Lions, Beares, Boares, and sundrie other sa-
uage beastes to be put, willed the Giaunt to looke out at an
other, that thei might talke together, whiche hee presencyly
did: Deemyng hymselfe happye in receiuyng suche fauour
of his Dame. But as hee was in beginnyng to declare the
hnsainednes of his affections, the Dame who was wylle
and guilefull, seemyng to giue attentiuue eare to his speach,
did let fal (as though it were by misregard) one of her Br-
acelets, garnished ouer with fine Diamondes, Rubies, E-
meraldes, and other Precious stones curiously wrought,
which she was accusomed to weare on her Armes: where-
at she seemyng to be somewhat agriued, did complaine for
the losse of her Bracelet. Squamel seeyng her grief conceit-
ued for the want of so riche and precious a Jewell, and mi-
strusting no whit the malice of his Maistris, offered rather
hastely then willingly to descende into the place, if it liked

E. iij. her

The Hystorie

her thinking þ he loued him so wel, that he would not per-
mit hym to assubiet his person to such evident hazardes a-
mong such a number of wilde Beastes: but his expectation
was deceiued. For the Dame most instauntly required him
to doe it, and hee without gainesayng or delaye, furnished
with no defensible thing, excepce his Sworde only, descent-
ded deliuery into the Parke of rampyng Lions and oþer
cruell beastes: who had no sooner perceiued hym, but like
vano a companie of dogges (when they see a Wolfe inua-
ding the flocke to catche a Sheepe) so ranne they from all
partes to assaile hym: but so incomparable was his mighty
prowesse, in that exgent, that after hee had killed a greate
maynie of them, hee escaped alue out of that deadly daun-
ger, howbeit not without sundry Woundes and Bruises:
whereof reþoþte beyng made to the kyng, he was no leſſe a-
stonished at the hardines of the Giant, th̄ aggred at the
losse of his beastes: for hee tooke greate delight in the ke-
ping of them. Wherefore in his indignaciō he threatened to
put the Gaunt to death without respect of the seruice done
by hym. Who beyng aduertized of his displeasure, caused
sixe or seauen greate shippes to be rigged for his speedy a-
uoydying out of the Realme of Myla: to the ende he might
escape the reache of the kynges power beyng his Loide, a-
gainst whom he would not for any thing in the world make
resistaunce. Then commityng hymselfe to the Surges of
the Sea, bearing an Ocean of Passions in his mynde, be-
fore his departure he tooke Congee of his Dame: who in
steede of Adieu, vomityng out the venyme which she caried
in her cankred stomacke, she vþbraided him w a thousande
iniuries and þeuish slaunders: whiche might haue appa-
rauntly assured the Giant of the spicelernes of his disloyall
Lady. Yet he making small account thereof, and supposing
that she had spoken the same in jest, persuaded himselfe, that
(such discortesie and mischieuousnes, faydyng no place in
the heart of so fayre and louely a Dame) it could not be but
that he was ardently beloued of her, sauing þ she would not
haue

of Gerileon.

fol. III.

haue it appeare, for feare lest any shold thereof certifie the
king her father. Wandering on the sea, and blinded with
this false opinion, by aduenture he discouered the faire Isle,
whiche with the ayde of many of vs that were his especiall
frendes (who had accompanied hym in all that Journey) he
conquered, and established hymself in the seate Royall, after
that hee had chased hym that was in possession afore, from
thence: although he was a puissaunte Prince, and defeated
the moxe parte of them that wchstoode his attempte. And
in consideration of the beauty, holsome site and plenciful-
nes of the same Isle, he determined to make the same a place
of continuall aboade for hym during life. Now, for because
it is a place where many vessels doe use to lye at Ancre, hee
determined to spoyle as many as he could possibly catche,
whiche hee omitted not to doe accordingly: so that by the
Riches and Furniture whiche he hath purchased through
such kynd of pilling, he is become one of the most puissaunc
and redoubted Princes that is in Grece, except the Em-
perour of Constantinople, as sometymes I haue heard hym
repose unto the knyght Slayne by you: who had beeene not
long sytence in his seruice in the company of the Duke of
Chalcide. That knyght, fallyng extremely in loue with the
Daughter of the same Duke, had required sundry tymes
her loue in lieu, but the proude and disdainefull Damozell
despising hym, did set light by his suite: wherat the knyght
takynge exceeding indignation, and thinking to be reuen-
ged, as he walked abroade on a certaine daye, he met with a
straunger, who in his time had been so connyng in the arte
of Magique, þ by his skill he had formed a Goblet of Gold
(wherin were set many fayre Precious stones of value in-
estimable) endued with such vertue, that who so dranke ther-
in, what soever the potion were, should bee enamoured on
that person, who had poured the drinke into the said Gob-
let. Which he restte frō the poore Magician, who had bene
an exile of Persia: for that the greate Souldan of that region
would haue had ic, to the ende he might purchase the loue of

Ce. iiij.

the

The Hy storie

" the Emperours daughter of *Constantinople*. Thus hauyng
 " recovered this enchaunted Cup, he founde meanes that his
 " cruell Dame dranke thererin, who was and is yet so entan-
 " gled in the loue of a young Page, whiche somtymes serued
 " her, that she shranked not to prostitute her body, to be abused
 " by hym in *Venus* valiaunces and dispoyces: but to the ende
 " he might bereue her of the sweete delights, whiche she had
 " with her newe loue, the knight sleue hym: and vpon this occa-
 " sion was forced to forsake his countrie, lest he shold be ap-
 " prehended and punished. As he was wandering on the sea,
 " entenyng to haue gone into Persia, to sell the same cuppe
 " to the greate *Souldan*, hee was preuented, in his Journey
 " by vs: who vnder the conduct of our Maister *Squamel* (se-
 " yng that there arived no other ship at our Isle, by the spoile
 " whereof wee might encrease our wealth as wee were accu-
 " stomed) wee beganne to roue along the Seas from Coaste
 " to Coast, to get some good booty. And so this knight being
 " taken as before is saied, the Giaunt *Squamel* commaunded
 " hym to be Closed vp into an euill fauoured and lothesome
 " Prison, in the companie of many others whom he had held
 " there in miserable chaldome: whō at suche tymes as he en-
 " tered any voyage on the Sea, to apprehende some vesselles
 " passing by, he caused them to be bounde very straitly to the
 " mast: So that the same knight beyng there placed among
 " the rest, and chauncyng to heare the Giant complaine of the
 " cructie and rigour of faire *Lucinde* his Dame, tolde hym
 " that if he would graunte hym libertie, hee would so vse the
 " matter, that the Giant shold be so muche beloued of her, as
 " now he is hated, by the vertue of the golden Goblet, wher-
 " of we haue made mention. The Giaunt consented thereto
 " willingly. Afterwardes the knight hauyng deliuered it, he
 " traunailed into high *Mysia*, where he found meanes to make
 " his Dame secretly a Presente of the Inchaunted Goblet,
 " wherein he caused her to drinke, saiyng that it retained the
 " property that the Dame or gentlewoman which he shold
 " graunt to drinke in the same, shold become so faire, that

he

of Gerileon.

fol. 112.

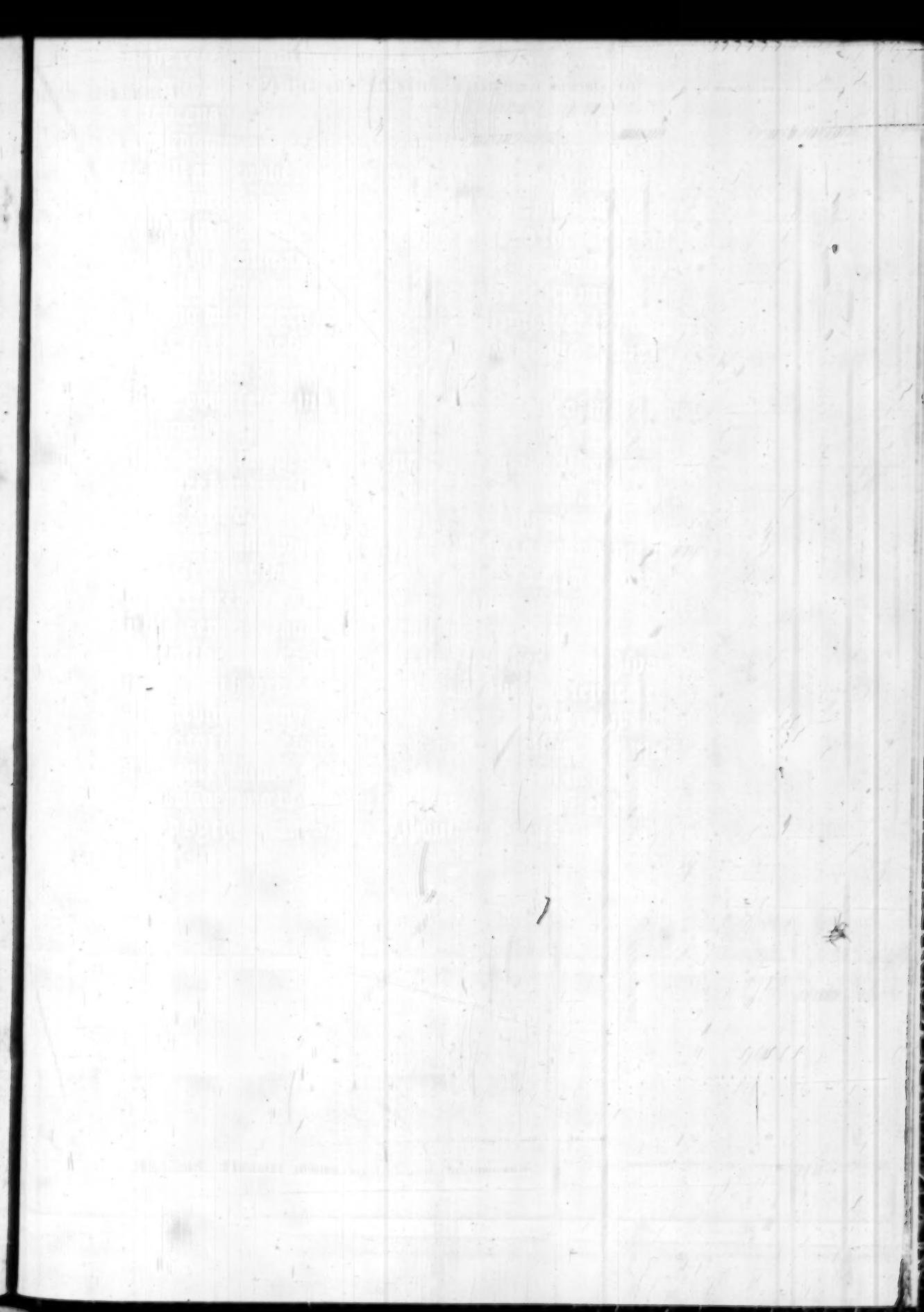
She shold be seconde to none in perfection of beautie . But the triall verified his woordes to bē vntre, for in fcedē of augmenting of her beauty, she is contrariwise so withered, wanne, and disfigured, that shee hath loste the principallest parte of her beautifulnes : shee hath euer since, and is still so worn away by force of her amourous passion. For our maister hath purposed to suffer her to languishe so long, as he remained boide vnder the seruile yoke of her loue. Whereat he received suche contentacion, that for the recōpence of the gift offered unto him by that knight, he constituted hym Lieutenance generall and vicegerent in his absence, of the kyngdome of the faire Isle: cōmitting unto hym all charge to kill and robbe whatsoeuer he may by any possilitie at taine unto: whiche he endeavouring to accomplish, this aduenture is happened unto hym (and to the other knight, beyng his colin, and taken with hym whom your compaignon hath slaine) whiche you knowe better then my selfe. For having discouered you, hee left his Armie that is not farre hence, to searche for that whiche he was no more able to de maunde then I or al they, whose daies you haue cut of. And assure your selfe (my Loerde) that if the rest of my compaignons should vnderstande of his death, you shall hardly escape, they happenyng to encounter you: for they are moxe then sixe hundrech stoute and lussy Souldiers. Behold (my Loerde) the occasion wherupon he was appointed to be our Capitaine, and what he was, according to your demaunde.

After that the Pirate had ended his tale, in the order aforesdeclared, the Youtche who attentively gaue eare, called to his remembraunce, that this Knight was the person, wherof the Ladie enamoured (lacking her Louer) spake even as you heard reported afores, when he was separated frō his faichfull frēende Pharisor. Wherfore he reioyced not alittle, for that he had reuenged her quarell, in recompence of the intetainmēt, which she had made hym in her Castle. And cōsideryng with hym self, that the Inchauiced Cup, de tained by the Giant Squamel, should serue his turne passing well

The Hystorie

Well, in the pursuite of his Loue , determined therefore , to
winne it from the Giante, eicher by faire meanes, or force:
after that he had founde , and fought with the vñknowen
knight , to wreake the death of *Pharisor*, who on the other
side aduentured to doe the like: wherevpon such chaunces
befell hym , as more sikel and pleasauntly I entende to re-
counte in the seconde Booke . For now am I constrained to
leau the Youthe of the Fairies, wandryng vpon the maine
Seas, in the compaignie of hym, whom he pursued (to whō
fortuned the moste straunge aduerture that ever was heard
of) because that reason requireth me to ende this first part:
for so muche as the same order is obserued, by our auncient
Chronicler Gallarx, whose stile and maner of writing I doe
imitate. Wherefore, my Lords & Dames, I humbly request
you to holde me excused, if any defecte happen to bee founde
in this booke : assuryng you to supplie all suche wantes in
the nexte, with more pleasure and contentmente, if so bee it
shall like you to bestowe your cōuenient leasure, in the rea-
dying thereof, and that with vsurie : reciting vnto you the
deadfull combate betwene the Youch of the Fairies, and
the Giant *Squamol* (who withhelde his horse and Armour)
and of the moste couragious and puissaunte knight *Nabor*,
who had the good *Swoide Duranzarde*, whiche he had cō-
quered from the Giant *Scaraferab*: and did cutte any thyng
that ic did light vppon: & likewise the enchaunted Armour:
whiche I perswade my self, shall yelde no lesse delight vnto
valiant knigthes (who receiuue pleasure in hearyng of the
woxthy actes of our auncestours) then the loue ful of bitter
pleasures and swete bitternes, betweene the saide Youthe
and the Lady *Porphyrie*, wil be pleasureable to all beautiful
and fauourable Dames. For I will there describe many
other accidentes , no lesse delectable then wou-
derfull, contained within the compasse
of this Hystorie.

FINIS.



TITLE The gallant... h
of Englande...
AUTHOR Maisonneuve,
LIBRARY Huntington
LIBRARY REF. NO. 62447
ORDER NO. 16005

END

UNIVER
ANN ARB

hystorie of Gerilem

2, Ede DATE 1578

7

S.T.C. NO. 17203

IVERSITY MICROFILMS

BOR

MICHIGAN